

Math symbol tables

A.1 Hebrew and Greek letters

Hebrew letters

Type	Typeset
<code>\aleph</code>	ℵ
<code>\beth</code>	ℶ
<code>\daleth</code>	ℷ
<code>\gimel</code>	ℸ

Greek letters

Lowercase

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\alpha</code>	α	<code>\iota</code>	ι	<code>\sigma</code>	σ
<code>\beta</code>	β	<code>\kappa</code>	κ	<code>\tau</code>	τ
<code>\gamma</code>	γ	<code>\lambda</code>	λ	<code>\upsilon</code>	υ
<code>\delta</code>	δ	<code>\mu</code>	μ	<code>\phi</code>	ϕ
<code>\epsilon</code>	ϵ	<code>\nu</code>	ν	<code>\chi</code>	χ
<code>\zeta</code>	ζ	<code>\xi</code>	ξ	<code>\psi</code>	ψ
<code>\eta</code>	η	<code>\pi</code>	π	<code>\omega</code>	ω
<code>\theta</code>	θ	<code>\rho</code>	ρ		
<code>\varepsilon</code>	ε	<code>\varpi</code>	ϖ	<code>\varsigma</code>	ς
<code>\vartheta</code>	ϑ	<code>\varrho</code>	ϱ	<code>\varphi</code>	φ
	<code>\digamma</code>	f	<code>\varkappa</code>	\varkappa	

Uppercase

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\Gamma</code>	Γ	<code>\Xi</code>	Ξ	<code>\Phi</code>	Φ
<code>\Delta</code>	Δ	<code>\Pi</code>	Π	<code>\Psi</code>	Ψ
<code>\Theta</code>	Θ	<code>\Sigma</code>	Σ	<code>\Omega</code>	Ω
<code>\Lambda</code>	Λ	<code>\Upsilon</code>	Υ		
<code>\varGamma</code>	\varGamma	<code>\varXi</code>	\varXi	<code>\varPhi</code>	\varPhi
<code>\varDelta</code>	\varDelta	<code>\varPi</code>	\varPi	<code>\varPsi</code>	\varPsi
<code>\varTheta</code>	\varTheta	<code>\varSigma</code>	\varSigma	<code>\varOmega</code>	\varOmega
<code>\varLambda</code>	\varLambda	<code>\varUpsilon</code>	\varUpsilon		

A.2 Binary relations

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<	<	>	>
=	=	:	:
\in	∈	\ni or \owns	∋
\leq or \le	≤	\geq or \ge	≥
\ll	≪	\gg	≫
\prec	<	\succ	>
\preceq	≤	\succeq	≥
\sim	~	\approx	≈
\simeq	≈	\cong	≅
\equiv	≡	\doteq	⋮
\subset	⊂	\supset	⊃
\subseteq	⊆	\supseteq	⊇
\sqsubseteq	⊏	\sqsupseteq	⊐
\smile	⌣	\frown	⌢
\perp	⊥	\models	⊨
\mid		\parallel	∥
\vdash	⊢	\dashv	⊣
\propto	∝	\asymp	⋈
\bowtie	⋈		
\sqsubset	⊏	\sqsupset	⊐
\Join	⋈		

Note the \colon command used in $f : x \rightarrow x^2$, typed as

f \colon x \to x^2

More binary relations

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\leqq</code>	\leqslant	<code>\geqq</code>	\geqslant
<code>\leqslant</code>	\leq	<code>\geqslant</code>	\geq
<code>\eqslantless</code>	\lessapprox	<code>\eqslantgtr</code>	\gtrapprox
<code>\lessssim</code>	\lesssim	<code>\gtrsim</code>	\gtrsim
<code>\lessapprox</code>	\lessapprox	<code>\gtrapprox</code>	\gtrapprox
<code>\approxeq</code>	\approx		
<code>\lessdot</code>	\lessdot	<code>\gtrdot</code>	\gtrdot
<code>\lll</code>	\lll	<code>\ggg</code>	\ggg
<code>\lessgtr</code>	\lessgtr	<code>\gtrless</code>	\gtrless
<code>\lesseqgtr</code>	\lesseqgtr	<code>\gtreqless</code>	\gtreqless
<code>\lesseqqgtr</code>	\lesseqqgtr	<code>\gtreqqless</code>	\gtreqqless
<code>\doteqdot</code>	\doteqdot	<code>\eqcirc</code>	\eqcirc
<code>\circeq</code>	\circeq	<code>\triangleq</code>	\triangleq
<code>\risingdotseq</code>	\risingdotseq	<code>\fallingdotseq</code>	\fallingdotseq
<code>\backsim</code>	\backsim	<code>\thicksim</code>	\thicksim
<code>\backsimeq</code>	\backsimeq	<code>\thickapprox</code>	\thickapprox
<code>\preccurlyeq</code>	\preccurlyeq	<code>\succcurlyeq</code>	\succcurlyeq
<code>\curlyeqprec</code>	\curlyeqprec	<code>\curlyeqsucc</code>	\curlyeqsucc
<code>\precsim</code>	\precsim	<code>\succsim</code>	\succsim
<code>\precapprox</code>	\precapprox	<code>\succapprox</code>	\succapprox
<code>\subteqq</code>	\subteqq	<code>\supseteqq</code>	\supseteqq
<code>\Subset</code>	\Subset	<code>\Supset</code>	\Supset
<code>\vartriangleleft</code>	\vartriangleleft	<code>\vartriangleright</code>	\vartriangleright
<code>\trianglelefteq</code>	\trianglelefteq	<code>\trianglerighteq</code>	\trianglerighteq
<code>\vDash</code>	\vDash	<code>\Vdash</code>	\Vdash
<code>\Vvdash</code>	\Vvdash		
<code>\smallsmile</code>	\smallsmile	<code>\smallfrown</code>	\smallfrown
<code>\shortmid</code>	\shortmid	<code>\shortparallel</code>	\shortparallel
<code>\bumpeq</code>	\bumpeq	<code>\Bumpeq</code>	\Bumpeq
<code>\between</code>	\between	<code>\pitchfork</code>	\pitchfork
<code>\varpropto</code>	\varpropto	<code>\backepsilon</code>	\backepsilon
<code>\blacktriangleleft</code>	\blacktriangleleft	<code>\blacktriangleright</code>	\blacktriangleright
<code>\therefore</code>	\therefore	<code>\because</code>	\because

Negated binary relations

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\neq</code> or <code>\ne</code>	\neq	<code>\notin</code>	\notin
<code>\nless</code>	\nless	<code>\ngtr</code>	\ngtr
<code>\nleq</code>	\nleq	<code>\ngeq</code>	\ngeq
<code>\nleqslant</code>	\nleqslant	<code>\ngeqslant</code>	\ngeqslant
<code>\nleqq</code>	\nleqq	<code>\ngeqq</code>	\ngeqq
<code>\lneq</code>	\lneq	<code>\gneq</code>	\gneq
<code>\lneqq</code>	\lneqq	<code>\gneqq</code>	\gneqq
<code>\lvertneqq</code>	\lvertneqq	<code>\gvertneqq</code>	\gvertneqq
<code>\lnsim</code>	\lnsim	<code>\gnsim</code>	\gnsim
<code>\lnapprox</code>	\lnapprox	<code>\gnapprox</code>	\gnapprox
<code>\nprec</code>	\nprec	<code>\nsucc</code>	\nsucc
<code>\npreceq</code>	\npreceq	<code>\nsucceq</code>	\nsucceq
<code>\precneqq</code>	\precneqq	<code>\succneqq</code>	\succneqq
<code>\precnsim</code>	\precnsim	<code>\succnsim</code>	\succnsim
<code>\precnapprox</code>	\precnapprox	<code>\succnapprox</code>	\succnapprox
<code>\nsim</code>	\nsim	<code>\ncong</code>	\ncong
<code>\nshortmid</code>	\nshortmid	<code>\nshortparallel</code>	\nshortparallel
<code>\nmid</code>	\nmid	<code>\nparallel</code>	\nparallel
<code>\nvdash</code>	\nvdash	<code>\nvDash</code>	\nvDash
<code>\nVdash</code>	\nVdash	<code>\nVDash</code>	\nVDash
<code>\ntriangleleft</code>	\ntriangleleft	<code>\ntriangleright</code>	\ntriangleright
<code>\ntrianglelefteq</code>	\ntrianglelefteq	<code>\ntrianglerighteq</code>	\ntrianglerighteq
<code>\nsubseteq</code>	\nsubseteq	<code>\nsupseteq</code>	\nsupseteq
<code>\nsubseteqq</code>	\nsubseteqq	<code>\nsupseteqq</code>	\nsupseteqq
<code>\subsetneq</code>	\subsetneq	<code>\supsetneq</code>	\supsetneq
<code>\varsubsetneq</code>	\varsubsetneq	<code>\varsupsetneq</code>	\varsupsetneq
<code>\subsetneqq</code>	\subsetneqq	<code>\supsetneqq</code>	\supsetneqq
<code>\varsubsetneqq</code>	\varsubsetneqq	<code>\varsupsetneqq</code>	\varsupsetneqq

A.3 Binary operations

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>+</code>	$+$	<code>-</code>	$-$
<code>\pm</code>	\pm	<code>\mp</code>	\mp
<code>\times</code>	\times	<code>\cdot</code>	\cdot
<code>\circ</code>	\circ	<code>\bigcirc</code>	\bigcirc
<code>\div</code>	\div	<code>\bmod</code>	mod
<code>\cap</code>	\cap	<code>\cup</code>	\cup
<code>\sqcap</code>	\sqcap	<code>\sqcup</code>	\sqcup
<code>\wedge</code> or <code>\land</code>	\wedge	<code>\vee</code> or <code>\lor</code>	\vee
<code>\triangleleft</code>	\triangleleft	<code>\triangleright</code>	\triangleright
<code>\bigtriangleup</code>	\bigtriangleup	<code>\bigtriangledown</code>	\bigtriangledown
<code>\oplus</code>	\oplus	<code>\ominus</code>	\ominus
<code>\otimes</code>	\otimes	<code>\oslash</code>	\oslash
<code>\odot</code>	\odot	<code>\bullet</code>	\bullet
<code>\dagger</code>	\dagger	<code>\ddagger</code>	\ddagger
<code>\setminus</code>	\setminus	<code>\smallsetminus</code>	\smallsetminus
<code>\wr</code>	\wr	<code>\amalg</code>	\amalg
<code>\ast</code>	\ast	<code>\star</code>	\star
<code>\diamond</code>	\diamond		
<code>\lhd</code>	\lhd	<code>\rhd</code>	\rhd
<code>\unlhd</code>	\unlhd	<code>\unrhd</code>	\unrhd
<code>\dotplus</code>	\dotplus	<code>\centerdot</code>	\cdot
<code>\ltimes</code>	\ltimes	<code>\rtimes</code>	\rtimes
<code>\leftthreetimes</code>	\leftthreetimes	<code>\rightthreetimes</code>	\rightthreetimes
<code>\circleddash</code>	\circleddash	<code>\uplus</code>	\uplus
<code>\barwedge</code>	\barwedge	<code>\doublebarwedge</code>	\doublebarwedge
<code>\curlywedge</code>	\curlywedge	<code>\curlyvee</code>	\curlyvee
<code>\veebar</code>	\veebar	<code>\intercal</code>	\intercal
<code>\doublecap</code> or <code>\Cap</code>	\doublecap	<code>\doublecup</code> or <code>\Cup</code>	\doublecup
<code>\circledast</code>	\circledast	<code>\circledcirc</code>	\circledcirc
<code>\boxminus</code>	\boxminus	<code>\boxtimes</code>	\boxtimes
<code>\boxdot</code>	\boxdot	<code>\boxplus</code>	\boxplus
<code>\divideontimes</code>	\divideontimes	<code>\vartriangle</code>	\vartriangle
<code>\And</code>	\And		

A.4 Arrows

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\leftarrow</code>	\leftarrow	<code>\rightarrow</code> or <code>\to</code>	\rightarrow
<code>\longleftarrow</code>	\longleftarrow	<code>\longrightarrow</code>	\longrightarrow
<code>\Leftarrow</code>	\Leftarrow	<code>\Rightarrow</code>	\Rightarrow
<code>\Longleftarrow</code>	\Longleftarrow	<code>\Longrightarrow</code>	\Longrightarrow
<code>\leftrightarrow</code>	\leftrightarrow	<code>\longlefttrightarrow</code>	\longleftrightarrow
<code>\Leftrightarrow</code>	\Leftrightarrow	<code>\Longlefttrightarrow</code>	\Longleftrightarrow
<code>\uparrow</code>	\uparrow	<code>\downarrow</code>	\downarrow
<code>\Uparrow</code>	\Uparrow	<code>\Downarrow</code>	\Downarrow
<code>\updownarrow</code>	\updownarrow	<code>\Updownarrow</code>	\Updownarrow
<code>\nearrow</code>	\nearrow	<code>\searrow</code>	\searrow
<code>\swarrow</code>	\swarrow	<code>\nwarrow</code>	\nwarrow
<code>\iff</code>	\iff	<code>\mapsto</code>	\mapsto
<code>\mapsto</code>	\mapsto	<code>\longmapsto</code>	\longmapsto
<code>\hookrightarrow</code>	\hookrightarrow	<code>\hookleftarrow</code>	\hookleftarrow
<code>\leftharpoonup</code>	\leftharpoonup	<code>\rightharpoonup</code>	\rightharpoonup
<code>\leftharpoondown</code>	\leftharpoondown	<code>\rightharpoondown</code>	\rightharpoondown
<code>\leadsto</code>	\leadsto		
<code>\leftleftarrows</code>	\leftleftarrows	<code>\rightrightarrows</code>	\rightrightarrows
<code>\leftrightarrows</code>	\leftrightarrows	<code>\rightleftarrows</code>	\rightleftarrows
<code>\Lleftarrow</code>	\Lleftarrow	<code>\Rrightarrow</code>	\Rrightarrow
<code>\twoheadleftarrow</code>	\twoheadleftarrow	<code>\twoheadrightarrow</code>	\twoheadrightarrow
<code>\leftarrowtail</code>	\leftarrowtail	<code>\rightarrowtail</code>	\rightarrowtail
<code>\looparrowleft</code>	\looparrowleft	<code>\looparrowright</code>	\looparrowright
<code>\upuparrows</code>	\upuparrows	<code>\downdownarrows</code>	\downdownarrows
<code>\upharpoonleft</code>	\upharpoonleft	<code>\upharpoonright</code>	\upharpoonright
<code>\downharpoonleft</code>	\downharpoonleft	<code>\downharpoonright</code>	\downharpoonright
<code>\leftrightsquigarrow</code>	\leftrightsquigarrow	<code>\rightsquigarrow</code>	\rightsquigarrow
<code>\multimap</code>	\multimap		
<code>\nleftarrow</code>	\nleftarrow	<code>\nrightarrow</code>	\nrightarrow
<code>\nLeftarrow</code>	\nLeftarrow	<code>\nRightarrow</code>	\nRightarrow
<code>\nleftrightarrow</code>	\nleftrightarrow	<code>\nLeftrightarrow</code>	\nLeftrightarrow
<code>\dashleftarrow</code>	\dashleftarrow	<code>\dashrightarrow</code>	\dashrightarrow
<code>\curvearrowleft</code>	\curvearrowleft	<code>\curvearrowright</code>	\curvearrowright
<code>\circlearrowleft</code>	\circlearrowleft	<code>\circlearrowright</code>	\circlearrowright
<code>\leftrightharpoons</code>	\leftrightharpoons	<code>\rightleftharpoons</code>	\rightleftharpoons
<code>\Lsh</code>	\Lsh	<code>\Rsh</code>	\Rsh

A.5 Miscellaneous symbols

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\hbar</code>	\hbar	<code>\ell</code>	ℓ
<code>\imath</code>	\imath	<code>\jmath</code>	\jmath
<code>\wp</code>	\wp	<code>\partial</code>	∂
<code>\Im</code>	\Im	<code>\Re</code>	\Re
<code>\infty</code>	∞	<code>\prime</code>	\prime
<code>\emptyset</code>	\emptyset	<code>\varnothing</code>	\varnothing
<code>\forall</code>	\forall	<code>\exists</code>	\exists
<code>\smallint</code>	\int	<code>\triangle</code>	\triangle
<code>\top</code>	\top	<code>\bot</code>	\bot
<code>\P</code>	\P	<code>\S</code>	\S
<code>\dag</code>	\dagger	<code>\ddag</code>	\ddagger
<code>\flat</code>	\flat	<code>\natural</code>	\natural
<code>\sharp</code>	\sharp	<code>\angle</code>	\angle
<code>\clubsuit</code>	\clubsuit	<code>\diamondsuit</code>	\diamondsuit
<code>\heartsuit</code>	\heartsuit	<code>\spadesuit</code>	\spadesuit
<code>\surd</code>	\surd	<code>\nabla</code>	∇
<code>\pounds</code>	\pounds	<code>\neg</code> or <code>\lnot</code>	\neg
<code>\Box</code>	\Box	<code>\Diamond</code>	\Diamond
<code>\mho</code>	\mho		
<code>\hslash</code>	\hslash	<code>\complement</code>	\complement
<code>\backprime</code>	\backprime	<code>\nexists</code>	\nexists
<code>\Bbbk</code>	\Bbbk		
<code>\diagup</code>	\diagup	<code>\diagdown</code>	\diagdown
<code>\blacktriangle</code>	\blacktriangle	<code>\blacktriangledown</code>	\blacktriangledown
<code>\triangledown</code>	\triangledown	<code>\eth</code>	\eth
<code>\square</code>	\square	<code>\blacksquare</code>	\blacksquare
<code>\lozenge</code>	\lozenge	<code>\blacklozenge</code>	\blacklozenge
<code>\measuredangle</code>	\measuredangle	<code>\sphericalangle</code>	\sphericalangle
<code>\circledS</code>	\circledS	<code>\bigstar</code>	\bigstar
<code>\Finv</code>	\Finv	<code>\Game</code>	\Game

A.6 Delimiters

Name	Type	Typeset
left parenthesis	((
right parenthesis))
left bracket	[or \lbrack	[
right bracket] or \rbrack]
left brace	\{ or \lbrace	{
right brace	\} or \rbrace	}
backslash	\backslash	\
forward slash	/	/
left angle bracket	\langle	<
right angle bracket	\rangle	>
vertical line	or \vert	
double vertical line	\ or \Vert	
left floor	\lfloor	⌊
right floor	\rfloor	⌋
left ceiling	\lceil	⌈
right ceiling	\rceil	⌉
upward	\uparrow	↑
double upward	\Uparrow	⇑
downward	\downarrow	↓
double downward	\Downarrow	⇓
up-and-down	\updownarrow	↕
double up-and-down	\Updownarrow	⇕
upper-left corner	\ulcorner	⋈
upper-right corner	\urcorner	⋉
lower-left corner	\llcorner	⋐
lower-right corner	\lrcorner	⋑

A.7 Operators

“Pure” operators, with no limits

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\arccos</code>	<code>arccos</code>	<code>\cot</code>	<code>cot</code>	<code>\hom</code>	<code>hom</code>	<code>\sin</code>	<code>sin</code>
<code>\arcsin</code>	<code>arcsin</code>	<code>\coth</code>	<code>coth</code>	<code>\ker</code>	<code>ker</code>	<code>\sinh</code>	<code>sinh</code>
<code>\arctan</code>	<code>arctan</code>	<code>\csc</code>	<code>csc</code>	<code>\lg</code>	<code>lg</code>	<code>\tan</code>	<code>tan</code>
<code>\arg</code>	<code>arg</code>	<code>\deg</code>	<code>deg</code>	<code>\ln</code>	<code>ln</code>	<code>\tanh</code>	<code>tanh</code>
<code>\cos</code>	<code>cos</code>	<code>\dim</code>	<code>dim</code>	<code>\log</code>	<code>log</code>		
<code>\cosh</code>	<code>cosh</code>	<code>\exp</code>	<code>exp</code>	<code>\sec</code>	<code>sec</code>		

Operators with limits

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\det</code>	<code>det</code>	<code>\limsup</code>	<code>lim sup</code>
<code>\gcd</code>	<code>gcd</code>	<code>\max</code>	<code>max</code>
<code>\inf</code>	<code>inf</code>	<code>\min</code>	<code>min</code>
<code>\lim</code>	<code>lim</code>	<code>\Pr</code>	<code>Pr</code>
<code>\liminf</code>	<code>lim inf</code>	<code>\sup</code>	<code>sup</code>
<code>\injlim</code>	<code>inj lim</code>	<code>\projlim</code>	<code>proj lim</code>
<code>\varliminf</code>	<code><u>lim</u></code>	<code>\varlimsup</code>	<code><u>lim</u></code>
<code>\varinjlim</code>	<code><u>lim</u>_→</code>	<code>\varprojlim</code>	<code><u>lim</u>_←</code>

A.7.1 Large operators

Type	Inline	Displayed
<code>\int_{a}^{b}</code>	\int_a^b	\int_a^b
<code>\oint_{a}^{b}</code>	\oint_a^b	\oint_a^b
<code>\iint_{a}^{b}</code>	\iint_a^b	\iint_a^b
<code>\iiint_{a}^{b}</code>	\iiint_a^b	\iiint_a^b
<code>\iiiiint_{a}^{b}</code>	\iiiiint_a^b	\iiiiint_a^b
<code>\idotsint_{a}^{b}</code>	$\int \cdots \int_a^b$	$\int \cdots \int_a^b$
<code>\prod_{i=1}^n</code>	$\prod_{i=1}^n$	$\prod_{i=1}^n$
<code>\coprod_{i=1}^n</code>	$\coprod_{i=1}^n$	$\coprod_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigcap_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigcap_{i=1}^n$	$\bigcap_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigcup_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigcup_{i=1}^n$	$\bigcup_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigwedge_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigwedge_{i=1}^n$	$\bigwedge_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigvee_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigvee_{i=1}^n$	$\bigvee_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigsqcup_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigsqcup_{i=1}^n$	$\bigsqcup_{i=1}^n$
<code>\biguplus_{i=1}^n</code>	$\biguplus_{i=1}^n$	$\biguplus_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigotimes_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigotimes_{i=1}^n$	$\bigotimes_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigoplus_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigoplus_{i=1}^n$	$\bigoplus_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigodot_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigodot_{i=1}^n$	$\bigodot_{i=1}^n$
<code>\sum_{i=1}^n</code>	$\sum_{i=1}^n$	$\sum_{i=1}^n$

A.8 *Math accents and fonts*

Math accents

		amsxtra	
Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<code>\acute{a}</code>	\acute{a}		
<code>\bar{a}</code>	\bar{a}		
<code>\breve{a}</code>	\breve{a}	<code>\spbreve</code>	\sim
<code>\check{a}</code>	\check{a}	<code>\spcheck</code>	\vee
<code>\dot{a}</code>	\dot{a}	<code>\spdot</code>	\cdot
<code>\ddot{a}</code>	\ddot{a}	<code>\spddot</code>	\cdots
<code>\dddota</code>	\dddot{a}	<code>\spdddot</code>	\cdots
<code>\ddddota</code>	\ddddot{a}		
<code>\grave{a}</code>	\grave{a}		
<code>\hat{a}</code>	\hat{a}		
<code>\widehat{a}</code>	\widehat{a}	<code>\sphat</code>	\wedge
<code>\mathring{a}</code>	\mathring{a}		
<code>\tilde{a}</code>	\tilde{a}		
<code>\widetilde{a}</code>	\widetilde{a}	<code>\sptilde</code>	\sim
<code>\vec{a}</code>	\vec{a}		

Math fonts

Type	Typeset
$\mathrm{I\!T\!E\!X}$	
<code>\mathbf{A}</code>	\mathbf{A}
<code>\mathcal{A}</code>	\mathcal{A}
<code>\mathit{A}</code>	A
<code>\mathnormal{A}</code>	A
<code>\mathrm{A}</code>	A
<code>\mathsf{A}</code>	A
<code>\mathtt{A}</code>	\mathtt{A}
<code>\boldsymbol{\alpha}</code>	$\boldsymbol{\alpha}$
<code>\mathbb{A}</code>	\mathbb{A}
<code>\mathfrak{A}</code>	\mathfrak{A}
<code>\mathscr{A}</code>	\mathscr{A}

And thousand more from STIX (see Section 6.2)!
`\mathscr` requires the `eucal` package with the `mathscr` option

A.9 Math spacing commands

Name	Width	Short	Long
1 mu (math unit)	ı	\mspace{1mu}	
thinspace	ıı	\,	\thinspace
medspace	ııı	\:	\medspace
thickspace	ıııı	\;	\thickspace
interword space	ııııı	\ı	
1 em	ıııııı		\quad
2 em	ıııııııı		\qquad
Negative space			
1 mu	ı		\mspace{-1mu}
thinspace	ıı	\!	\negthinspace
medspace	ııı		\negmedspace
thickspace	ıııı		\negthickspace

Text symbol tables

B.1 Some European characters

Name	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
a-ring	\aa	å	\AA	Å
aesc	\ae	æ	\AE	Æ
ethel	\oe	œ	\OE	Œ
eszett	\ss	ß	\SS	ŠS
inverted question mark	?‘	¿		
inverted exclamation mark	!‘	¡		
slashed L	\l	ł	\L	Ł
slashed O	\o	ø	\O	Ø

B.2 *Text accents*

Name	Type	Typeset	Name	Type	Typeset
acute	\'{o}	ó	macron	\={o}	ō
breve	\u{o}	ö	overdot	\.{g}	ġ
caron/haček	\v{o}	ě	ring	\r{u}	û
cedilla	\c{c}	ç	tie	\t{oo}	ôo
circumflex	\~{o}	ô	tilde	\~{n}	ñ
dieresis/umlaut	\" {u}	ü	underdot	\d{m}	ṁ
double acute	\H{o}	ő	underbar	\b{o}	ō
grave	\`{o}	ò			
dotless i	\i	ı	dotless j	\j	ȷ
	\' {\i}	í		\v {\j}	ȶ

B.3 *Text font commands*

B.3.1 *Text font family commands*

Command with Argument	Command Declaration	Switches to the font family
\textnormal{...}	{\normalfont ...}	document
\emph{...}	{\em ...}	<i>emphasis</i>
\textrm{...}	{\rmfamily ...}	roman
\textsf{...}	{\sffamily ...}	sans serif
\texttt{...}	{\ttfamily ...}	typewriter style
\textup{...}	{\upshape ...}	upright shape
\textit{...}	{\itshape ...}	<i>italic shape</i>
\textsl{...}	{\slshape ...}	<i>slanted shape</i>
\textsc{...}	{\scshape ...}	SMALL CAPITALS
\textbf{...}	{\bfseries ...}	bold
\textmd{...}	{\mdseries ...}	normal weight and width

B.3.2 Text font size changes

Command	L ^A T _E X sample text	AMS sample text
<code>\Tiny</code>	[not available]	sample text
<code>\tiny</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\SMALL</code> or <code>\scriptsize</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\Small</code> or <code>\footnotesize</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\small</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\normalsize</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\large</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\Large</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\LARGE</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\huge</code>	sample text	sample text
<code>\Huge</code>	sample text	sample text

B.4 Additional text symbols

Name	Type	Typeset
ampersand	<code>\&</code>	&
asterisk bullet	<code>\textasteriskcentered</code>	*
backslash	<code>\textbackslash</code>	\
bar (caesura)	<code>\textbar</code>	
brace left	<code>\{</code>	{
brace right	<code>\}</code>	}
bullet	<code>\textbullet</code>	•
circled a	<code>\textcircled{a}</code>	Ⓐ
circumflex	<code>\textasciicircum</code>	^
copyright	<code>\copyright</code>	©
dagger	<code>\dag</code>	†
double dagger (diesis)	<code>\ddag</code>	‡
dollar	<code>\\$</code>	\$
double quotation left	<code>\textquotedblleft</code> or ‘	“
double quotation right	<code>\textquotedblright</code> or ’	”
em dash	<code>\textemdash</code> or ---	—
en dash	<code>\textendash</code> or --	–
exclamation down	<code>\textexclamdown</code> or !‘	¡
greater than	<code>\textgreater</code>	>
less than	<code>\textless</code>	<
lowline	<code>_</code>	—
midpoint	<code>\textperiodcentered</code>	·
octothorp	<code>\#</code>	#
percent	<code>\%</code>	%
pilcrow (paragraph)	<code>\P</code>	¶
question down	<code>\textquestiondown</code> or ?‘	¿
registered trademark	<code>\textregistered</code>	®
section	<code>\S</code>	§

Additional text symbols, *continued*

Name	Type	Typeset
single quote left	<code>\textquoteleft</code> or ‘	‘
single quote right	<code>\textquoteright</code> or ’	’
sterling	<code>\pounds</code>	£
superscript	<code>a</code>	^a
tilde	<code>\textasciitilde</code>	~
trademark	<code>\texttrademark</code>	™
visible space	<code>\textvisiblespace</code>	␣

For the `\textsubscript` command, see Section 10.3.

B.5 Additional text symbols with T1 encoding

An accent

Name	Type	Typeset
Ogonek	<code>\k{e}</code>	ę

European characters

Name	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
Eth	<code>\dh</code>	ð	<code>\DH</code>	Ð
Dyet	<code>\dj</code>	đ	<code>\DJ</code>	Đ
Eng	<code>\ng</code>	ŋ	<code>\NG</code>	Ŋ
Thorn	<code>\th</code>	þ	<code>\TH</code>	Þ

Quotation marks

Name	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
Single Guillemet	<code>\guilsinglleft</code>	<	<code>\guilsinglright</code>	>
Double Guillemet	<code>\guillemotleft</code>	«	<code>\guillemotright</code>	»
Single Quotation	<code>\quotesinglbase</code>	,	<code>\textquoteright</code>	’
Double Quotation	<code>\quotedblbase</code>	„	<code>\textquotedbl</code>	”

B.6 Text spacing commands

Name	Width	Short command	Long command
Positive Space			
Normal	varies	␣	
Intersentence	varies	\@.␣	
Interword	varies	\␣	
Italic Corr.	varies	\/\␣	
Tie	varies	~	
Thinspace	␣	\,	\thinspace
Medspace	␣	\:	\medspace
Thickspace	␣	\;	\thickspace
1 em	␣		\quad
2 em	␣		\qquad
Negative Space			
Thinspace	␣	\!	\negthinspace
Medspace	␣		\negmedspace
Thickspace	␣		\negthickspace

Some background

In this book we define \LaTeX as the foundation \TeX , the work platform \LaTeX , and the superstructure AMS packages rolled into one. While you do not need to know anything about \LaTeX 's detailed structure and history to use it, such knowledge may help you understand how and why \LaTeX works the way it does.

In Section C.1, we present a short history of \LaTeX , where it has come from and where it is going. Section C.2 provides a description of how \LaTeX works. In Section C.3 the various prompts are defined and Section C.4 discusses the separation of visual and logical design elements.

C.1 A short history

C.1.1 \TeX

Donald E. Knuth's multivolume work, *The Art of Computer Programming* [47], caused its author a great deal of frustration because it was very difficult to keep the volumes typographically uniform. To solve this problem, Knuth decided to create his own typesetting language. The result is described in *The \TeX book* [48].

A mathematical typesetting language takes care of the multitude of details that are so important in mathematical typesetting, including

- Spacing formulas properly
- Breaking text into pleasingly typeset lines and paragraphs
- Hyphenating words where necessary
- Providing hundreds of symbols for typesetting mathematics

\LaTeX does all this and more on almost any computer: Windows computer, Mac, UNIX, workstation, or mainframe. You can write your document on a Windows computer and e-mail it to a coworker who makes corrections on a Mac. The final manuscript might be sent to a publisher who uses a UNIX computer to prepare the document for printing.

Knuth realized that typesetting is only half the solution to the manuscript production problem. You also need a style designer—a specialist who determines what fonts to use, how large a vertical space to put before and after a theorem, and numerous other design issues.

C.1.2 \LaTeX 2.09 and AMS- \TeX

Knuth also realized that typesetting a complex document in \TeX requires a very knowledgeable user. So \TeX was designed as a platform on which *convenient work environments*—macro packages—could be built, more suitable for the average user to work with. It is somewhat unfortunate that *two* such platforms were made available to the mathematical community in the early 1980s, AMS- \TeX and \LaTeX .

AMS- \TeX was written by Michael D. Spivak for the American Mathematical Society, whereas \LaTeX was developed by Leslie Lamport. The strengths of the two systems were somewhat complementary. AMS- \TeX provided many features needed by mathematical articles, including

- Sophisticated math typesetting capabilities
- Extensive options for formatting multiline formulas
- Flexible bibliographic references

\LaTeX also provided many features, including

- The use of logical units to separate the logical and the visual design of an article
- Automatic numbering and cross-referencing
- Bibliographic databases

Both AMS- \TeX and \LaTeX became very popular, causing a split in the mathematical community as some chose one system over the other.

C.1.3 L^AT_EX 3

When Lamport decided not to develop L^AT_EX any further, the L^AT_EX 3 *team*¹ took over with the aim of actively supporting, maintaining, and updating L^AT_EX.

The goals for L^AT_EX 3 are very ambitious. L^AT_EX 3 will

- Provide high-quality typesetting for a wide variety of document types and typographic requirements
- Support direct formatting commands for editors and designers, which are essential to the fine-tuning of document layout and page design
- Process complex structured documents and support a document syntax that allows automatic translation of documents conforming to the international document-type definition standard SGML (Standard Generalized Markup Language, ISO 8879)
- Provide a common foundation for a number of incompatible L^AT_EX variants that have been developed, including the old L^AT_EX 2.09, L^AT_EX with the New Font Selection Scheme, and AMS-L^AT_EX

See two articles by Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley, L^AT_EX 2.09 → L^AT_EX 3 [57], 1992, and *The L^AT_EX 3 Project* [59], 1994, for a statement of goals. Go to The L^AT_EX 3 project at

<http://www.latex-project.org/latex3.html>

for more up-to-date articles and reports.

A number of L^AT_EX 3 projects have already been completed and are part of L^AT_EX, including:

The New Font Selection Scheme L^AT_EX uses Knuth's Computer Modern fonts. The New Font Selection Scheme, NFSS, of Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf, written in 1989, allows the *independent changing* of font attributes and the integration of new font families into L^AT_EX. With the proliferation of PostScript fonts and printers, more and more users want to use PostScript fonts in their L^AT_EX documents.

New and improved environments Frank Mittelbach wrote a new multicolumn environment and Rainer Schöpf improved the `verbatim` and `comment` environments. There have also been several improvements made to the `tabular` and `array` environments. The extremely important `graphicx` package by David Carlisle and Sebastian Rahtz was released.

¹A talented group of mathematicians and programmers, Frank Mittelbach, Chris Rowley, and Rainer Schöpf. The group has since expanded with the addition of Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, Michael Downes, Denys Duchier, Robin Fairbairns, Alan Jeffrey, and Martin Schröder; many volunteers have also contributed to the project. The current L^AT_EX 3 project team personnel are: Frank Mittelbach, Rainer Schöpf, Chris Rowley, David Carlisle, Johannes Braams, Robin Fairbairns, Morten Høgholm, Thomas Lotze, Javier Bezos, Will Robertson, Joseph Wright, and Bruno Le Floch.

The first interim solution

In 1990, the AMS released AMS- \LaTeX , version 1.0—see Rainer Schöpf’s *Foreword* to this book for a personal account. This release contained

- AMS- \TeX recoded to work with \LaTeX
- The NFSS styles for proclamations
- The new `verbatim` environment

AMS- \LaTeX , version 1.0, is a \LaTeX *dialect*. It was incompatible with the then current \LaTeX —version 2.09.

While the \LaTeX 3 team wanted to unify the mathematical community, this first attempt by the AMS split it even further apart. Many AMS- \TeX users simply refused to switch. Even today, 17 years later, many mathematicians cling to AMS- \TeX . Even the \LaTeX community was split into users of the old \LaTeX , those whose \LaTeX incorporated the NFSS, and AMS- \LaTeX users.

The second interim solution

When it became obvious that the goals of \LaTeX 3 could not be fulfilled any time soon, the \LaTeX 3 team decided to issue a new version of \LaTeX , version 2e (also called \LaTeX e) in June of 1994. This version replaced \LaTeX 2.09, see the two Mittelbach and Rowley articles cited above. This interim release accomplished some of \LaTeX 3’s goals, including the projects listed previously. Since then, \LaTeX e (called \LaTeX today) has become accepted as the standard \LaTeX .

In February of 1995, the AMS released version 1.2 of AMS- \LaTeX (which I call the AMS packages in this book) built on top of the new \LaTeX . Michael Downes was the project leader.

The changes in AMS- \LaTeX were substantial. The `align` environment, for example, was completely rewritten by David M. Jones. The recoded AMS- \TeX had now become a \LaTeX package, `amsmath`.

It is extremely important to note that while AMS- \LaTeX 1.0 and 1.1 were monolithic structures, versions 1.2 and 2.0 (see Section C.1.4) are just collections of packages that fit nicely into the \LaTeX model. You can use one AMS package or all, by themselves or mixed with other \LaTeX packages. This book was typeset using the \LaTeX document class (`book`) and the AMS packages, version 2.13, along with a number of other \LaTeX (non-AMS) packages.

C.1.4 More recent developments

Since 1996, changes to \LaTeX have been minor. A few new symbols have been added. Much work has been done on character encoding and LM (Latin Modern) fonts by Bogusław Jackowski and Janusz M. Nowacki to extend \LaTeX to languages other than American English (see Appendixes E and F).

In 1999, the American Mathematical Society released version 2.0 of the AMS packages and in 2004, version 2.2. About the same time, a consortium (made up of the AMS, Blue Sky Research, and Y&Y) released free PostScript versions of the CM and AMS fonts. These PostScript fonts are now part of any L^AT_EX distribution.

Interestingly, there are still those who argue that the AMS packages are not part and parcel of L^AT_EX and typesetting math. In life, almost everything is a compromise, in software design, even more so. Using the AMS packages to typeset math is an exception. It costs you nothing—if you do not need their features for a document, then you don't have to use them. You need not sacrifice anything in order to have the power of the AMS packages available when you need them. This is why, in this book, by L^AT_EX we mean L^AT_EX with the AMS packages.

C.2 How L^AT_EX works

In this section, I present a very simplified overview of the inner workings of L^AT_EX.

C.2.1 The layers

T_EX and L^AT_EX consist of many layers. These include:

`virtex` T_EX's core, containing about 350 primitive commands such as

`input` `accent` `hsize`

`virtex` can also read *format files*, which are precompiled sets of commands. L^AT_EX is nothing more than `virtex` reading in a large set of commands, built layer upon layer.

`plain.tex` The most basic layer built on `virtex`. It adds about 600 commands to `virtex`. When you invoke the TeX command, `virtex` loads the `plain` format, which is the default. The core T_EX commands combined with the commands defined by the `plain` format are called Plain T_EX.

Plain T_EX is described in detail in Appendix B of Knuth's *The T_EXbook* [48]. You can also read `plain.tex`, a text file in the L^AT_EX distribution. Plain T_EX is powerful enough that you could do all your work in it. This approach is advocated by many, including Michael Doob in his book, *T_EX Starting from [1]* [12].

`virtex` cannot build (compile) format files. For that you need another version of T_EX called `initex`, which loads the most basic information a format needs, such as the hyphenation tables and `plain.tex`, and creates a format file.

L^AT_EX

L^AT_EX is a format file containing a compiled set of commands written by Leslie Lamport and others. It provides tools for logical document design, automatic numbering and

cross-referencing, tables of contents, and many other features. The new \LaTeX we are using is under the control of the $\text{\LaTeX}3$ group.

Document classes

The document class forms the next layer. You may choose

- `amsart`, `amsbook`, or `amspoc`, provided by the AMS
- `article`, `book`, `letter`, `proc`, `report`, or `slides`, the legacy classes
- or any one of a large (and growing) number of other document classes provided by publishers of books and journals, universities, and other interested parties

Packages

The next layer is made up of the packages loaded by the document. You can use standard \LaTeX packages, AMS packages, or any of hundreds of other packages in the \LaTeX universe, mixed together as necessary. Any package may require other packages, or may automatically load other packages.

Documents

At the top of this hierarchy sit your documents, with their custom commands and environments, utilizing all the power derived from the layers below.

C.2.2 Typesetting

When typesetting, \LaTeX uses two basic types of files, the source files and the font metric files.

A font metric file is designed to hold the information for a font of a given size and style. Each \LaTeX font metric file, called a `tfm` file, contains the size of each character, the kerning (the space placed between two adjacent characters), the length of the italic correction, the size of the interword space, and so on. A typical `tfm` file is `cmr10.tfm`, which is the \LaTeX font metric file for the font `cmr` (CM roman) at 10-point size.

\LaTeX reads the source file one line at a time. It converts the characters of each line into a *token sequence*. A token is either a character—together with an indication of what role the character plays—or a command. The argument of a command is the token following it unless a group enclosed in braces follows it, in which case the contents of the group becomes the argument.² An example of this behavior can be seen when you specify an exponent. \LaTeX looks for the next token as the exponent unless a group enclosed in braces follows the `^` symbol. This explains why `2^3` and `2^α`

²Delimited commands work somewhat differently (see Section 14.1.9).

work, but $\frac{3}{\alpha}$ does not. Indeed, 3 and α each become a single token but $\frac{3}{\alpha}$ becomes more than one, four, in fact. Of course, if you *always* use braces, as in

$\frac{3}{\alpha}$, $\frac{\alpha}{\alpha}$, $\frac{\frac{3}{\alpha}}{\alpha}$

then you never have to think about tokens to type such expressions.

After tokenizing the text, L^AT_EX hyphenates it and attempts to split the paragraph into lines of the required width. The measurements of the characters—also called glyphs—are absolute, as are the distances between characters—called kerning. The spaces, interword space, intersentence space, and so on, are made of *glue* or rubber length (see Section 14.5.2). Glue has three parameters:

- the length of the space
- stretchability, the amount by which it can be made longer
- shrinkability, the amount by which it can be made shorter

L^AT_EX stretches and shrinks glue to form lines of equal length.

L^AT_EX employs a formula to measure how much stretching and shrinking is necessary in a line. The result is called badness. A badness of 0 is perfect, while a badness of 10,000 is very bad. Lines that are too wide are reported with messages such as

```
Overfull \hbox (5.61168pt too wide) in paragraph
      at lines 49--57
```

The badness of a line that is stretched too much is reported as follows:

```
Underfull \hbox (badness 1189) in paragraph
      at lines 93--93
```

Once enough paragraphs are put together, L^AT_EX composes a page from the typeset paragraphs using vertical glue. A short page generates a warning message such as

```
Underfull \vbox (badness 10000) has
occurred while \output is active
```

The typeset file is stored as a dvi (Device Independent) file or a PDF file.

C.2.3 Viewing and printing

Viewing and printing L^AT_EX's typeset output are not really part of L^AT_EX proper, but they are obviously an important part of your work environment. The printer driver prints the dvi and PDF files, and the video driver lets you view them on your monitor.

C.2.4 L^AT_EX's files

Auxiliary files

L^AT_EX is a *one-pass compiler*, that is, it reads the source file once only for typesetting. As a result, L^AT_EX must use auxiliary files to store information it generates during a run. For each typesetting run, L^AT_EX uses the auxiliary files compiled during the *previous* typesetting run. This mechanism explains why you have to typeset twice or more (see Section 17.2) to make sure that changes you have made to the source files are reflected in the typeset document. Such an auxiliary file has the same base name as the source file, the extension indicates its type.

The most important auxiliary file, the aux file, contains a great deal of information about the document, most importantly, the data needed for symbolic referencing. Here are two typical entries:

```
\newlabel{struct}{5}{2}
\bibcite{eM57a}{4}
```

The first entry indicates that a new symbolic reference was introduced on page 2 of the typeset document in Section 5 using the command

```
\label{struct}
```

The command `\ref{struct}` produces 5, while `\pageref{struct}` yields 2.

The second entry indicates that the bibliographic entry with label eM57a has been assigned the number 4, so `\cite{eM57a}` produces [4].

There is an aux file for the source file being processed, and another one for each file included in the main file by an `\include` command.

No auxiliary file is written if the `\nofiles` command is given. The message

No auxiliary output files.

in the log file reminds you that `\nofiles` is in effect.

The log file contains all the information shown in the log window during the typesetting. The dvi file contains the typeset version of the source file.

There are five auxiliary files that store information for special tasks. They are written only if that special task is invoked by a command and there is no `\nofiles` command. The additional auxiliary files are

glo Contains the glossary entries produced by `\glossary` commands. A new file is written only if there is a

```
\makeglossary
```

command in the source file (see Section 16.6).

lof Contains the entries used to compile a list of figures. A new file is written only if there is a

`\listoffigures`

command in the source file (see Section 8.4.3).

lot Contains the entries used to compile a list of tables. A new file is written only if there is a

`\listoftables`

command in the source file (see Section 8.4.3).

toc Contains the entries used to compile a table of contents. A new file is written only if there is a

`\tableofcontents`

command in the source file (see Section 17.2).

For information about the auxiliary files created by B^IB^T_E^X and *MakeIndex*, see Sections 15.2.3 and 16.3, respectively. Some classes and packages create additional auxiliary files (see Section 11.2.3 for an example).

Versions

A complete L^AT_EX distribution consists of hundreds of files, all of which interact in some way. Since most of these files have had many revisions, you should make sure that they are all up-to-date and compatible with each other. You can check the version numbers and dates by reading the first few lines of each file in a text editor or by checking the dates and version numbers that are shown on the list created by the command `\listfiles`, which I discuss later in this section.

L^AT_EX has been updated every year. While writing this book, I used the version of L^AT_EX that was issued on May 5, 2014.

When you typeset a L^AT_EX document, L^AT_EX prints its release date in the log file with a line such as

```
LaTeX2e <2014/05/01>
```

If you use a L^AT_EX feature that was introduced recently, you can put a command such as the following into the preamble of your source file:

```
\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2008/12/01]
```

This command specifies the date of the oldest version of L^AT_EX that may be used to typeset your file. If someone attempts to typeset your file with an older version, L^AT_EX generates a warning.

The AMS math package `amsmath` is at version 2.13, the document classes at version 2.26, and the AMSFonts set is at version 2.2d. See Section D.1 for more information on obtaining updated versions.

If you include the `\listfiles` command in the preamble of your document, then the log file contains a detailed listing of all the files used in the typesetting of your document. Here are the first few (truncated) lines from such a listing:

```
*File List*
  book.cls      1999/01/07 v1.4a Standard LaTeX document class
  leqno.clo     1998/08/17 v1.1c Standard LaTeX option
                  (left equation numbers)
  bk10.clo      2007/10/19 v1.4h Standard LaTeX file (size option)
  MiL5.sty      2014/12/15 Commands for MiL5
  amsmath.sty   2013/01/14 v2.14 AMS math features
  amstext.sty   2000/06/29 v2.01
  amsgen.sty    1999/11/30 v2.0
  amsbsy.sty    1999/11/29 v1.2d
  amsopn.sty    1999/12/14 v2.01 operator names
  amsthm.sty    2004/08/06 v2.20
  verbatim.sty  2003/08/22 v1.5q LaTeX2e package for
                  verbatim enhancements
  amsextra.sty  1999/11/15 v1.2c
  eucal.sty     2009/06/22 v3.00 Euler Script fonts
  amssymb.sty   2013/01/14 v3.01 AMS font symbols
  amsfonts.sty  2013/01/14 v3.01 Basic AMSFonts support
  omxcmex.fd    1999/05/25 v2.5h Standard LaTeX
                  font definitions
  latexsym.sty  1998/08/17 v2.2e Standard LaTeX package
                  (lasy symbols)
  amscd.sty     1999/11/29 v1.2d
  alltt.sty     1997/06/16 v2.0g defines alltt environment
  xspace.sty    2009/10/20 v1.13 Space after command
                  names (DPC,MH)
  graphicx.sty  2014/04/25 v1.0g Enhanced LaTeX Graphics
                  (DPC,SPQR)
  keyval.sty    2014/05/08 v1.15 key=value parser (DPC)
  graphics.sty  2009/02/05 v1.0o Standard LaTeX Graphics
                  (DPC,SPQR)
  trig.sty      1999/03/16 v1.09 sin cos tan (DPC)
```

This list looks quite up-to-date (in fact, it is completely up-to-date). To confirm this, open the file `alltt.sty` in the latest L^AT_EX distribution. You find the lines

```
\ProvidesPackage{alltt}
    [1997/06/16 v2.0g defines alltt environment]
```

that explain the date found in the listing.

C.3 Interactive L^AT_EX

If L^AT_EX cannot carry out your instructions, it displays a *prompt* and possibly an error message in the log window.

- The ****** prompt means that L^AT_EX needs to know the name of a source file to typeset. This usually means that you misspelled a file name, you are trying to typeset a document that is not located in L^AT_EX's current folder, or that there is a space in the name of your source file.
- The **?** prompt indicates that L^AT_EX has found an error in your source file, and wants you to decide what to do next. You can try to continue typesetting the file by pressing
 - **Return**
 - **q** to typeset in quiet mode, not stopping for errors. Depending on the nature of the error, L^AT_EX may either recover or generate more error messages
 - **x** to stop typesetting your file
 - **h** to get advice on how to correct the error
- If you have misspelled the name of a package in a `\usepackage` command, or if L^AT_EX cannot find a file, it displays a message similar to the following:

```
! LaTeX Error: File 'misspelled.sty' not found.
Type X to quit or <RETURN> to proceed,
or enter new name. (Default extension: sty)
```

```
Enter file name:
```

You can either type the correct name of the file at the prompt, or type **x** to quit L^AT_EX.

- The ***** prompt signifies that L^AT_EX is in *interactive mode* and is waiting for instructions. To get such a prompt, comment out the line

```
\end{document}
```

in a source file, then typeset the file. Interactive instructions, such as `\show` and `\showthe` (see Section 14.1.8) may be given at the ***** prompt. To exit, type

```
\end{document}
```

at the ***** prompt, and press Return.

- If you get the ***** prompt and no error message, type `\stop` and press Return.

C.4 Separating form and content

In Section 2.3, we discuss logical and visual design and how \LaTeX allows you to concentrate on the logical design and takes care of the visual design.

\LaTeX uses four tools to separate the logical and visual design of a document:

1. **Commands** Information is given to \LaTeX in the arguments of commands. For instance, title page information is given in this form. The final organization and appearance of the title page is completely up to the document class and its options.

A more subtle example is the use of a command for distinguishing a term or notation. For instance, you may want to use an `\env` command for environment names. You may define `\env` as follows:

```
\newcommand{\env}[1]{\texttt{#1}}
```

This gives you a command that typesets all environment names in typewriter style (see Section 3.6.2). Logically, you have decided that an environment name should be marked up. Visually, you may change your decision any time. By changing the definition to

```
\newcommand{\env}[1]{\textbf{#1}}
```

all environment names are typeset in bold (see Section 3.6.5).

The following example is taken from `secondarticleccom.tex` (see Section 9.3 and the `samples` folder). This article defines the construct $D^{(2)}$ with the command

```
\newcommand{\Dsqr}{D^{\langle 2 \rangle}}
```

If a referee or coauthor suggests a different notation, editing this *one line* changes the notation throughout the entire article.

2. **Environments** Important logical structures are placed within environments. For example, list items are typed within a list environment (see Section 4.2) and formatted accordingly. If you later decide to change the type of the list, you can do so by simply changing the name of the environment.
3. **Proclamations** You can change the style or numbering scheme of any proclamation at any time by changing that proclamation's definition in the preamble. See the typeset `secondarticle` article on pages 272–275 for examples of proclamations typeset with different styles.
4. **Numbering and cross-referencing** Theorems, lemmas, definitions, sections, and equations are logical units that can be freely moved around. \LaTeX automatically recalculates the numbers and cross-references.

You write articles to communicate your ideas. The closer you get to a separation of logical and visual design, the more you are able to concentrate on that goal. Of course, you can never quite reach this ideal. For instance, a `line too wide` warning (see Sections 1.4 and 3.7.1) is a problem of visual design. When a journal changes the document class in an article you submitted, unless the new document class retains the same fonts and line width of the document class you used, new `line too wide` problems arise. \LaTeX is successful in automatically solving visual design problems well over 95% of the time. That is getting fairly close to the ideal.

\LaTeX and the Internet

While \LaTeX is pretty stable, the rest of the world around us is changing very fast and the Internet plays an ever larger role in our lives. This appendix deals with the Internet as a useful source of \LaTeX information.

The Internet is clearly the main repository of all matters \LaTeX , and the Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network (CTAN) is the preeminent collection of \TeX -related material. Section [D.1](#) discusses how and where to find the \LaTeX distribution, AMS and \LaTeX packages, and the sample files for this book on CTAN.

Various international \TeX user groups (especially TUG, the \TeX Users Group) and the American Mathematical Society play a significant role in supporting \LaTeX . I discuss some of the major user groups in Section [D.2](#).

Finally, you find a great deal of useful information on the Internet concerning \LaTeX . I provide some pointers in Section [D.3](#).

D.1 Obtaining files from the Internet

Say you are interested in using Piet van Oostrum's `fancyhdr` package mentioned in Section 8.6. Chances are you can go ahead and use it, your \LaTeX installation already has it. In this age of gigantic hard disks, your \LaTeX installation places pretty much

everything on your computer. But what if your version of `fancyhdr` needs updating or you need a new package. How you go about getting it?

We discuss below the proper way of doing this, with an FTP client or a Web browser. But maybe the simplest approach is to google `fancyhdr`. The first line of the first entry of the complete list of 82,100 responses is

The TeX Catalogue OnLine, Entry for `fancyhdr`, Ctan Edition

Clicking on it takes you to a page describing the package. You can get the package by clicking on Download. It is this simple.

In general, there are two types of Internet sites from which you can download files:

- FTP sites (using the file transfer protocol)
- Web sites (using the HTTP protocol)

To access them, use a *client* application on your computer to connect to a *server* on another machine. Most *Web browsers*, which are designed to connect to Web sites, also handle FTP transfers.

All operating systems include a browser and an FTP client as part of the system.

The Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network

The Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network (CTAN) is the preeminent collection of \TeX -related material on the Internet. There are three main CTAN hosts:

- U.S.
 - FTP address: `ftp://tug.ctan.org/`
 - Web address: `http://www.ctan.org/`
- U.K.
 - FTP address: `ftp://ftp.tex.ac.uk/`
 - Web address: `http://www.tex.ac.uk/`
- Germany
 - FTP address: `ftp://ftp.dante.de/`
 - Web address: `http://www.dante.de/`

If you go to a CTAN site, at the very root you find `README.structure`, a very important file. It describes the bottom of the archive tree.

- `biblio` Systems for maintaining and presenting bibliographies within documents typeset using \LaTeX

- **digests** Collections of T_EX mailing list digests, T_EX-related ‘electronic magazines’, and indexes, etc., of printed publications
- **dviware** Printer drivers and previewers, etc., for DVI files
- **fonts** Fonts written in Metafont, and support for using fonts from other sources (e.g., those in Adobe Type 1 format)
- **graphics** Systems and T_EX macros for producing graphics
- **help** FAQs and similar direct assistance, the catalogue
- **indexing** Systems for maintaining and presenting indexes of documents typeset using T_EX.
- **info** Manuals and extended how-to information, errata for T_EX-related publications, collections of project (e.g., L^AT_EX and NTS) documents, etc.
- **language** Support for various languages
- **macros** T_EX macros. Several directories have significant sub-trees.
- **obsolete** Material which is now obsolete, including all of L^AT_EX 2.09
- **support** T_EX support environments and the like
- **systems** T_EX systems. Organized by operating environment
- **tds** The T_EX Directory Structure standard
- **usergrps** Information supplied by T_EX User Groups
- **web** Literate Programming tools and systems

All of these have many subdirectories, for instance, **info** has the **examples** subdirectory that contains the sample files for this book. This is a rather new subdirectory, older sample files are in **info** proper.

So if you are interested in BIB_TE_X, you go to **biblio/**, and so on. The explanations are clear. All matters L^AT_EX are in **macros/latex/**, which has a number of subdirectories, including

- **contrib**—Contributed L^AT_EX macros
- **unpacked**—Unpacked copy of the L^AT_EX sources
- **required**—Packages “required” of a L^AT_EX distribution

There are many *full mirrors*, exact duplicates, of CTAN and many *partial mirrors*. At the root of CTAN you find the **README.mirrors** file listing them all. To reduce network load, you should try to use a mirror located near you.

Many CTAN sites now have easy search access with Web browsers. For instance, point your browser to

<http://tug.ctan.org/search.html>

In the search field, type `fancyhdr`, and you get a long list of links. Click on

`macros/latex/contrib/fancyhdr.zip`

and you are done. If you type `gratzer`, you get the links to the help files of my various books—in `info/` and `info/examples/`.

The AMS packages

Chances are that you received the AMS packages with your \LaTeX distribution. If you did not, or if you want to update them, go to a CTAN site:

- `/tex-archive/fonts/amsfonts/latex/`
- `/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/amslatex/`

or to the AMS site:

<http://www.ams.org/tex/amslatex.html>

The sample files

The sample files for this book, introduced in Section 1.1.2 on page 5, live on CTAN in the directory

`/info/examples/Math_into_LaTeX-5`

You can go to `/info/examples/` and download it, or you can search for the directory name `Math_into_LaTeX-5`. If you forget these, just search for `gratzer`.

You can also find the *Mission Impossible* (Part I) on CTAN:

`/info/Math_into_LaTeX-4/Mission_Impossible.pdf`

D.2 The \TeX Users Group

The \TeX Users Group (TUG) does a tremendous job of supporting and promoting \TeX , by publishing a journal, *TUGboat*, three times a year and organizing an annual international conference. TUG also helps support the \LaTeX 3 team in maintaining \LaTeX and developing \LaTeX 3.

Consider joining TUG if you have an interest in \LaTeX . TUG's contact information is:

PO Box 2311
Portland, OR 97208-23110

Telephone: (503) 223-9994

E-mail: office@tug.org

Web page: <http://www.tug.org/>

If you are a member, you receive every year a brand new T_EX Live DVD, which contains everything you need to install L^AT_EX.

The American Mathematical Society

The AMS provides excellent technical advice for using the AMS packages and AMS-Fonts. You can reach the AMS technical staff by e-mail at tech-support@ams.org, or by telephone at (800) 321-4267 or (401) 455-4080. You can also find a great deal of helpful T_EX information on the AMS Web site in the Author Resource Center.

D.3 Some useful sources of L^AT_EX information

You may find useful the Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) documents maintained on CTAN; search FAQ. The U.K. T_EX Users Group maintains its own FAQ list at

<http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?introduction=yes>

The AMS FAQ is at

<http://www.ams.org/authors/author-faq.html>

You can also ask most T_EX-related questions in the Usenet newsgroup `comp.text.tex`.

PostScript fonts

In the late 1990s, as we mentioned in Section C.1.4, a consortium (the AMS, Blue Sky Research, and Y&Y) released a free PostScript version of the CM and AMS fonts, so everyone could switch to PostScript fonts, a tremendous advance for \LaTeX users.

The Computer Modern fonts were originally “hardwired” into \LaTeX . Many users liked \LaTeX but disliked the Computer Modern font, and with the spread of personal computers and PostScript laser printers, it was imperative that more PostScript fonts be integrated into \LaTeX . In Section E.1, I describe how easy it is to use standard PostScript fonts, such as Times. In Section E.2, I show you how to replace the CM and AMS fonts in a \LaTeX document with the Lucida Bright fonts.

“PostScript font” is the terminology that lay people, like me, use. The proper terminology is *Adobe Type 1 format font*. PostScript has provision for a wide range of fonts including Type 3 and Type 1 (as well as Type 42 and Type 5, and so on). The Type 3 font category is very general and includes bitmap fonts, grayscaled fonts, and so on. Type 1 fonts are tightly constrained *outline* fonts, which can be accurately rendered at almost any resolution, and have a special purpose code that deals only with Type 1 fonts.

E.1 The Times font and MathTime

In this section, we step through the process of incorporating the Adobe Times font into a \LaTeX document to replace the Computer Modern text fonts, and, optionally, of using the *MathTime Pro 2* math fonts to replace the Computer Modern math fonts. To do so, we use the PSNFSS packages (see Section 10.3).

A document class specifies three standard font families (see Section 3.6.2):

- A roman (or serif) font family
- A sans serif font family
- A typewriter style font family

The `times` package in the PSNFSS distribution makes Times the roman font family, Helvetica the sans serif font family, and Courier the typewriter style font family.

Setting up Times

First, install the Adobe Times, Helvetica, and Courier PostScript fonts and their \TeX font metric files.

Now typeset the `psfonts.ins` file—in the PSNFSS distribution. This produces `sty` files for the standard PostScript fonts. The Times style file is called `times.sty`. If you do not already have it, copy it into a folder \LaTeX can access.

To use the `times` package, you must have the *font definition* (`fd`) files for the fonts specified. By checking the `times.sty` file, you see that you need three files for the three fonts: Times, Helvetica, and Courier. In the `times` package these are named `ptm`, `phv`, and `pcr`, respectively. The three file names, each comprising three characters, are the font names in the naming scheme devised by Karl Berry. In `ptm`, `p` stands for the foundry's name (in this case, Adobe), `tm` stands for Times, `hv` for Helvetica, and `cr` for Courier. The corresponding font definition files are named `ot1ptm.fd`, `ot1phv.fd`, and `ot1pcr.fd`, respectively. OT1 designates the old \TeX font encoding scheme, which is not discussed here. You can get these files from CTAN (see Section D.1). If you do not already have it, copy it into a folder \LaTeX can access.

Using Times

In the preamble of your document, type

```
\usepackage{times}
```

after the `\documentclass` line. Then Times becomes the roman, Helvetica the sans serif, and Courier the typewriter style document font family. That is all there is to it.

Using the `times` package changes the document font family throughout your document. To switch to Times only occasionally, type

```
{\fontfamily{ptm}\selectfont phrase}
```

The text preceding and following this construct is not affected. For example,

```
\fontfamily{ptm}\selectfont
This text is typeset in the Times font.}
```

typesets as

```
┌
└ This text is typeset in the Times font.
```

Similarly,

```
\fontfamily{ptm}\selectfont
This text is typeset in the Times font.
\normalfont
```

also typesets the same phrase in Times. Recall that the `\normalfont` command restores the document font family (see Section 3.6.2).

Setting up *MathTime*

Looking at a mathematical article typeset with the Times text font, you may find that the Computer Modern math symbols look too thin. To more closely match Times and other PostScript fonts, Michael Spivak modified the CM math symbols, calling these modified fonts *MathTime Pro 2*. You can purchase these fonts from Personal TeX,

<http://store.pctextstore.com/>

Install the *MathTime Pro 2* PostScript fonts and the TeX font metric files. If you do not already have them, copy from PSNFSS the files

```
mathtime.ins  mathtime.dtx  mtfonds.fdd
```

into a folder L^AT_EX can access.

Typeset `mathtime.ins` to produce the necessary `fd` files and the `mathtime.sty` file.

Using *MathTime*

If you want to use Times as the document font family and *MathTime* as the default math font, specify

```
\usepackage[LY1]{fontenc}           %specify font encoding
\usepackage[LY1,mtbold]{mathtime}    %switch math fonts
\usepackage{times}                   %switch text fonts
```

in the preamble of your document.

The `mathtime` package has many options. See its documentation for more information; typeset `mathtime.dtx` to get it.

E.2 *Lucida Bright fonts*

Another alternative to Computer Modern fonts is *Lucida Bright* for both text and math fonts. You can purchase the Lucida Bright fonts from TUG.

Copy the files

```
lucidabr.ins, lucidabr.dtx,  
lucidabr.fdd,lucidabr.yy
```

into your T_EX input folder. Typeset `lucidabr.yy`, producing the `lucidabr.sty` file and a large number of `fd` files.

Now add the lines

```
\usepackage[LY1]{fontenc}    %specify font encoding  
\usepackage[LY1]{lucidabr}   %switch text and math fonts
```

in the preamble of your document. The `lucidabr` package has many options. See its documentation—typeset `lucidabr.dtx` to get it.

E.3 *More PostScript fonts*

You can obtain PostScript fonts from a wide variety of sources. There are many free PostScript fonts on CTAN. Table E.1 is a short list of the more prominent commercial vendors.

See also the Web page at <http://www.microsoft.com/typography/> for a lot of useful information and links.

Foundry	URL
Adobe	www.adobe.com/type/
Agfa/Monotype	www.agfamonotype.com/
Berthold	www.bertholdtypes.com/
Bitstream	www.bitstream.com/
Emigre	www.emigre.com/
Hoefler	www.typography.com/
ITC	www.itcfonts.com/
Linotype	www.linotype.com/
Monotype	www.fonts.com/
Scriptorium	www.fontcraft.com/
Vintage	www.vintagetype.com/

Table E.1: Some type foundries on the Internet.

L^AT_EX *localized*

If the language in which you write articles is not American English and/or your keyboard is not the standard American keyboard, you may find it annoying and sometimes difficult to use standard L^AT_EX. The annoyance may start with finding out how to type ~ for a nonbreakable space, to L^AT_EX's inability to properly hyphenate Gr\{"a}tzer, and L^AT_EX's inability to use a different alphabet.

Many of the improvements to L^AT_EX in recent years have been to localize L^AT_EX, that is, to adapt L^AT_EX for use with languages other than American English and keyboards other than standard American keyboards. The `babel`, `fontenc`, `inputenc` packages are the major players, along with new font-encoding schemes, including the T1 encoding. You find these packages as part of the L^AT_EX distribution (see Section 10.3).

The `babel` package is described in detail in Johannes Braams, *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes* [7] and in Chapter 9 of *The L^AT_EX Companion*, 2nd edition [56].

If you are interested in using a localized \LaTeX , you should turn to the \TeX user group for that linguistic group to find out what is available. You should also consult the `babel` user guide.

At a minimum, a supported language has translated redefinable names (see Table 14.1), and a localized variant of the `\today` command. Two very advanced language adaptations are German and French.

We first illustrate the use of the `babel` package with the German language, which gives you a rich set of features, including

- Allows you to type "a for `\{a}`
- Introduces "s for sharp s (eszett)
- Introduces "ck for a ck that becomes k-k when hyphenated

Type the following test file: (`german.tex` in the `samples` folder):

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[german]{babel}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}

\begin{document}
\section{H\"ullenoperatoren}
Es sei  $P$  eine teilweise geordnete Menge. Wir sagen,
dass in  $P$  ein \emph{H\"ullenoperator}  $\lambda$ 
erklart ist, wenn sich jedem  $a$  in  $P$  ein eindeutig
bestimmtes  $\lambda(a)$  in  $P$  zuordnen l"ast, so dass
die folgenden Bedingungen erf"ullt sind.
\end{document}
```

And here it is typeset:

1 H\"ullenoperatoren

Es sei P eine teilweise geordnete Menge. Wir sagen, dass in P ein *H\"ullenoperator* λ erklart ist, wenn sich jedem $a \in P$ ein eindeutig bestimmtes $\lambda(a) \in P$ zuordnen l"ast, so dass die folgenden Bedingungen erf"ullt sind.

The second example uses the following options for the packages:

```
\usepackage[T2A]{fontenc}
\usepackage[koi8-u]{inputenc}
\usepackage[ukrainian]{babel}
```

The encoding `koi8-u` is appropriate for Ukrainian.

And here is the typeset Ukrainian sample file:

Поняття теорії ігор

Віктор Анякін

31 липня 2006 р.

Логічною основою теорії ігор є формалізація трьох понять, які входять в її визначення і є фундаментальними для всієї теорії:

- Конфлікт,
- Прийняття рішення в конфлікті,
- Оптимальність прийнятого рішення.

Ці поняття розглядаються в теорії ігор у найширшому сенсі. Їх формалізації відповідають змістовним уявленням про відповідні об'єкти.

Змістовно, конфліктом можна вважати всяке явище, відносно якого можна казати про його учасників, про їхні дії, про результати явищ, до яких призводять ці дії, про сторони, які так чи інакше зацікавлені в таких наслідках, і про сутність цієї зацікавленості.

Якщо назвати учасників конфлікту *коаліціями дії* (позначивши їхню множину як \mathfrak{R}_D , можливі дії кожної із коаліцій дії — її *стратегіями* (множина всіх стратегій коаліції дії K позначається як S), результати конфлікту — *ситуаціями* (множина всіх ситуацій позначається як S ; вважається, що кожна ситуація складається внаслідок вибору кожної із коаліцій дії деякої своєї стратегії, так, що $S \subset \prod_{K \in \mathfrak{R}} S_K$), зацікавлені сторони — *коаліціями інтересів* (їх множина — \mathfrak{R}_I) і, нарешті, говорити про можливі переваги для кожної коаліції інтересів K однієї ситуації s' перед іншою s'' (цей факт позначається як $s' \prec_K s''$), то конфлікт в цілому може бути описаний як система

$$\Gamma = \langle \mathfrak{R}_D, \{S_K\}_{K \in \mathfrak{R}_D}, S, \mathfrak{R}_I, \{\prec_K\}_{K \in \mathfrak{R}_I} \rangle$$

Така система, яка представляє конфлікт, називається *грою*. Конкретизації складових, які задають гру, призводять до різноманітних класів ігор.

\LaTeX *on the iPad*

A few years back, personal computing was desktop-centric. For many tasks, for instance, for back up and for updating the operating system, you had to connect your smartphone and tablet with a computer. Tim Cook (Apple's CEO as I am writing this book) coined the term "Post PC revolution" to describe the trend that a tablet is no longer a younger brother of a PC, but an equal partner; in fact, for many users, it can be the only computer they will ever need.

But can you use it for your \LaTeX documents? Isn't the iPad designed only for e-mail, to read news, and enjoy entertainment? Certainly. While it has a fast CPU, it has an even more powerful graphics chip so viewing videos and complex Web pages is quick. The operating system is designed to make performing these basic tasks very easy and intuitive. iOS masks the complexities of the underlying computer.

Nevertheless, underneath this easy-to-use interface there is a Mac. Get a little familiar with the iPad as a computer, and you can work with your \LaTeX documents pretty well.

There are good reasons why the iPad is the only tablet I'll discuss. Today, the iPad is clearly the dominant tablet of more than a hundred on the market and the iPad is the only tablet with a decent market share that is in an *ecosystem*: the iPad is just one device under iCloud along with the iPhone, the Mac desktops, and the Mac notebooks.

I work on a \LaTeX document on my iMac, and when I am away from home, I continue my work on my MacBook Air or iPad; there is no interruption, all the devices are fully synchronized.

In Section G.1, we discuss the iPad file system, sandboxing, file transfers, printing, and text editing. We discuss where are the files to be \LaTeX ed and where the \LaTeX process takes place in Section G.2. Finally, in Section G.3, we introduce two \LaTeX implementations for the iPad: Texpad and TeX Writer.

This appendix is based on my articles in the Notices of the Amer. Math. Soc. **60** (2013), pp. 332–334 and 434–439. You can find these two articles, `NoticesV.pdf` and `NoticesVI.pdf`, in the `samples` folder for some more detail.

G.1 *The iPad as a computer*

To work on a \LaTeX document, you sit in front of your computer, in the complex folder hierarchy you find `document.tex`, double clicks it to start the \LaTeX implementation, edit the document, typeset it. Then you print `document.pdf`, proofread it, and then you go back to editing...

How do you do these steps on an iPad? On the iPad, there is only a rectangular array of apps, see Figure G.1. No documents are visible. There may be folders containing more apps, but no folder in a folder. There are no Library folders, no Download folder. And no File menu containing the Print command!

I have `document.tex` on my desktop, but how do I transfer it to the iPad? I would plug in my thumb drive to facilitate the transfer, but the iPad has no USB port.

G.1.1 *File system*

As we pointed out, the iPad starts up displaying a rectangular array of icons and folders for apps, as in see Figure G.1. There are no icons for documents. There is no familiar Desktop for documents and folders. No Applications folder. The screen is always occupied by a single window; the file system, as we know it from desktop computers, is gone.

In its place is an app-centric starting point. Touch the icon of an app and you are in business. When the app opens, you get access to the documents of the app.

For security reasons, the apps are sandboxed, limiting an app's access to files, preferences, network resources, hardware, and so on. Ars Technica's John Siracusa described the goal of sandboxing as follows: "Running an application inside a sandbox is meant to minimize the damage that could be caused if that application is compromised by a piece of malware. A sandboxed application voluntarily surrenders the ability to do many things that a normal process run by the same user could do. For example, a normal application run by a user has the ability to delete every single file owned by that user. Obviously, a well-behaved application will not do this. But if an application becomes compromised, it can be coerced into doing something destructive."



Figure G.1: A rectangular array of apps

Of course, the iPad is a computer, and it has a File System, we just do not see it. But it is important to visualize it. To help us along, we will use an app.

G.1.2 *FileApp*

If you search the iPad's App Store for "file" apps, there are more than 1,000 of them. Many of them could be used to help us understand the iPad file system. I choose FileApp by DigiDNA (Figures G.2 and G.3).

To get started, plug the iPad into a desktop computer, download and start the application iMazing on the computer; download and start FileApp on the iPad. On the left panel of iMazing, click on Apps, then on FileApp. Anything you drag into the right pane of DiskAid is copied to FileApp. So much for file transfer. To see the file structure of the various iPad apps, click on their names.

Of course, for file transfers I should also mention the ubiquitous Dropbox. Download it for the iPad, sign in (as you did for your computer Dropbox); that's it.



Figure G.2: iMazing

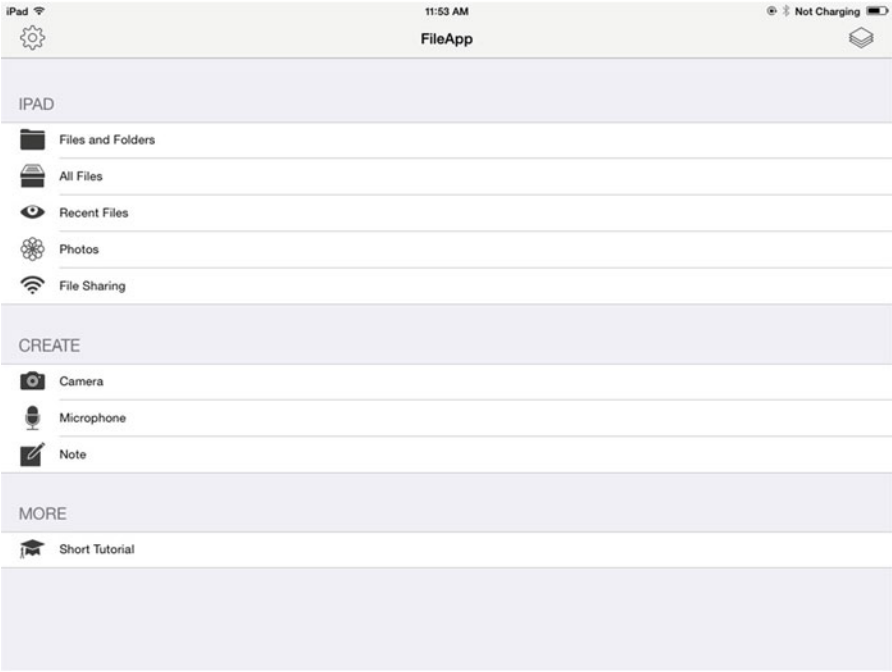


Figure G.3: FileApp

G.1.3 Printing

When I first wanted to print from my iPhone, I realized that there is no print command. However, lots of apps would do the job. In fact, searching for “print” in the App Store, I discovered over 600 apps; many of them print, utilizing my desktop computer.

Typical of these apps is PrintDirect (EuroSmartz) and Printer Pro (Readdle Productivity). They can use any printer connected with your desktop computer. They wirelessly connect to your computer and print with its help.

If so many apps can help me out with printing, how come iOS does not? Read the comments about iOS printing; I was not the only one confused.

However, if the iPad is the poster child of the Post PC Revolution, its native printing solution cannot involve desktop computers. Apple introduced the appropriate technology; they named it AirPrint. The idea is simple: the iPad collaborates with the printer. Of course, for this you need a wireless printer that is AirPrint aware. Apple lists all the AirPrint aware printers:

<http://support.apple.com/kb/ht4356>

as of this writing, about 2,000. If you are lucky and have one of these printers, test it. Open an e-mail and touch the Action icon (here it is the Reply icon); this offers you the options: Reply, Forward, and Print. Touch Print. Printer Options appears, and you can choose how many copies and on which printer. (Lots of apps provide more choices, such as page range.) Choose the printer and print.

For a second test, open a Web page in Safari. There is only one difference: the action icon is a curved arrow in a rectangle.

As a third test, open the Drudge Report. It has the familiar Action icon; we are in business. Finally, open the Politico app, read the news and look for an action icon. There is none. So to use AirPrint, you need an AirPrint aware printer and an AirPrint aware app! For the time being, these are limiting restrictions.

G.1.4 Text editors

Many of us edit L^AT_EX documents in text editors more sophisticated than the text editor that comes with the L^AT_EX implementation. There are so many text editors, well over 200..., see the table at

<http://brettterpstra.com/ios-text-editors/>

Keeping the iPad horizontal, the keyboard gobbles up too much real estate. Keeping it vertical, the keyboard is less intrusive, but the keys are smaller. If you want to do serious work on the iPad, use a keyboard.

The iOS’s touch text editing is nice, but it lacks a feature crucial for text editing: moving the cursor a character ahead or back. (Of course, keyboards have cursor keys!) Text editors offer a variety of solutions, for instance, finger swiping.

I will discuss briefly a very sophisticated text editor: Textastics. If you want Syntax Highlighting, Search and Replace, and Text Expander, this a good choice. In Figure G.4, you see me editing a document.

You can see the cursor navigation wheel (which appears with a two finger tap—finger swipe also moves the cursor). It comes with an excellent user manual. Textastics also has a Mac version. And if you spend time shaping it to your liking, then you would like the same tamed editor for all your work.

G.2 *Files*

The L^AT_EX files, of course, can always be composed in the app. You can obtain your existing files in two ways:

1. Using iTunes. To transfer files—one at a time—to your app from your computer using iTunes, connect your iPad to your computer and start iTunes by double clicking on its icon. Under Devices, we selected the iPad from the left side of the iTunes window (see Figure G.5). At the top of the iTunes window, next to Summary and Info, select Apps (see Figure G.6). The lower part of the window now has File Sharing; see Figure G.7. On the left, you see a listing of the apps available for file transfer. Select the app; the files already in the app are then listed in the right pane. Click on the add button and a file browser appears. Choose the file you want to transfer.

2. Via Dropbox. I assume that you have Dropbox. For an introduction, go to `dropbox.com`. In the app, you sign in to Dropbox. Now the app can see the contents of your Dropbox, or some part of it (at the Dropbox server) as long as you have an Internet connection.

3. With FileApp. See the discussion in Section G.1.2 (Figures G.2 and G.3).

G.3 *Two L^AT_EX implementations for the iPad*

We now discuss two L^AT_EX implementations.

G.3.1 *Texpad*

There are three ways Texpad can typeset.

A. On your iPad. The app places a L^AT_EX distribution on the iPad and you typeset with it. However, a complete L^AT_EX distribution is about 4 GB! No app can be this big. So you only get a small L^AT_EX distribution.

B. On your computer via Dropbox. This is the most powerful option. You have all the packages and fonts on your computer available to you. An app (such as AutomateTeX by Jonathan Weisberg) monitors if there is any change in the L^AT_EX file in Dropbox. If there is, the file is retypeset and the pdf is made available to you via the Dropbox.

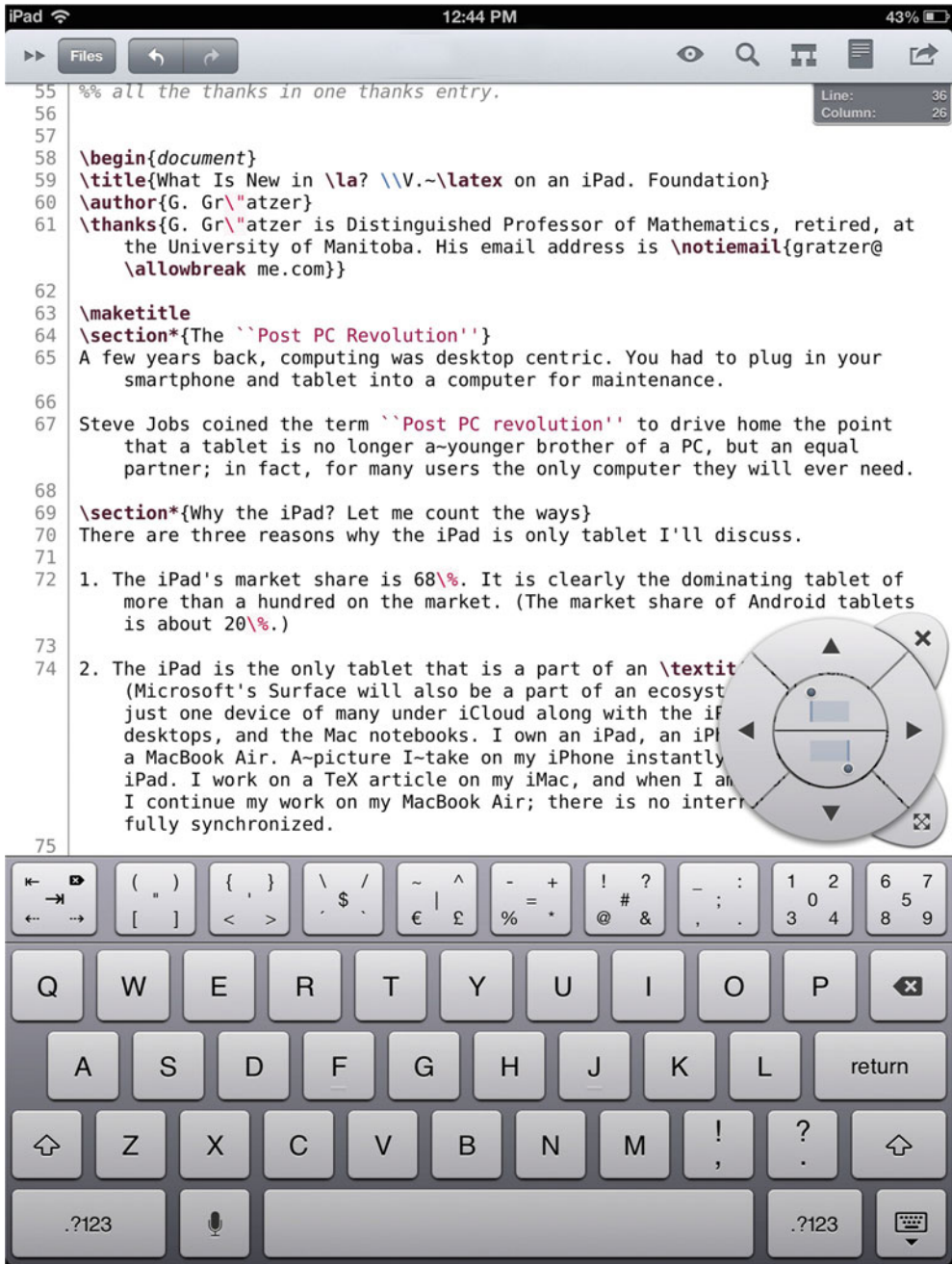


Figure G.4: Editing with Textastics

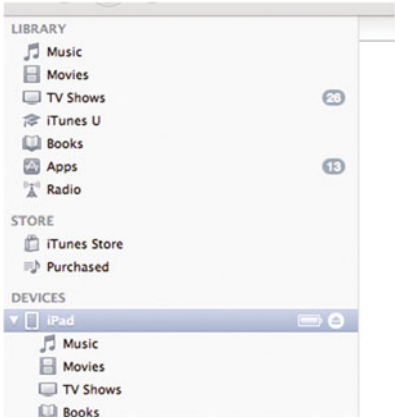


Figure G.5: Under Devices, we selected the iPad

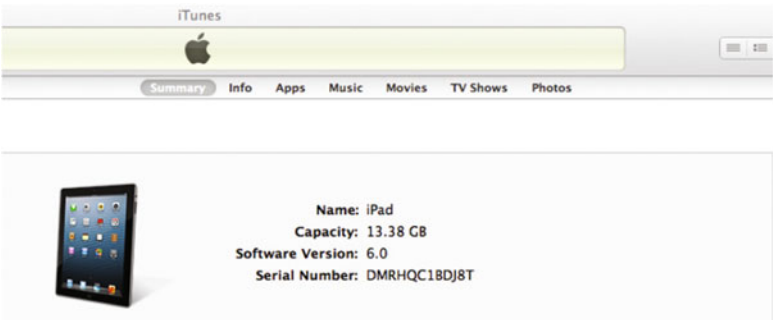


Figure G.6: Choose Apps

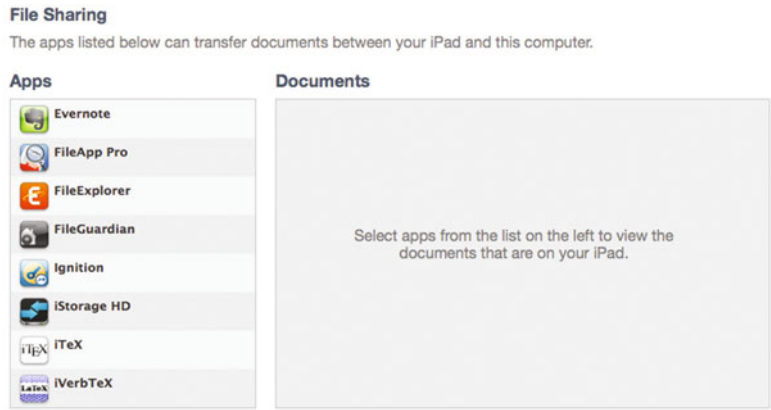


Figure G.7: Select app

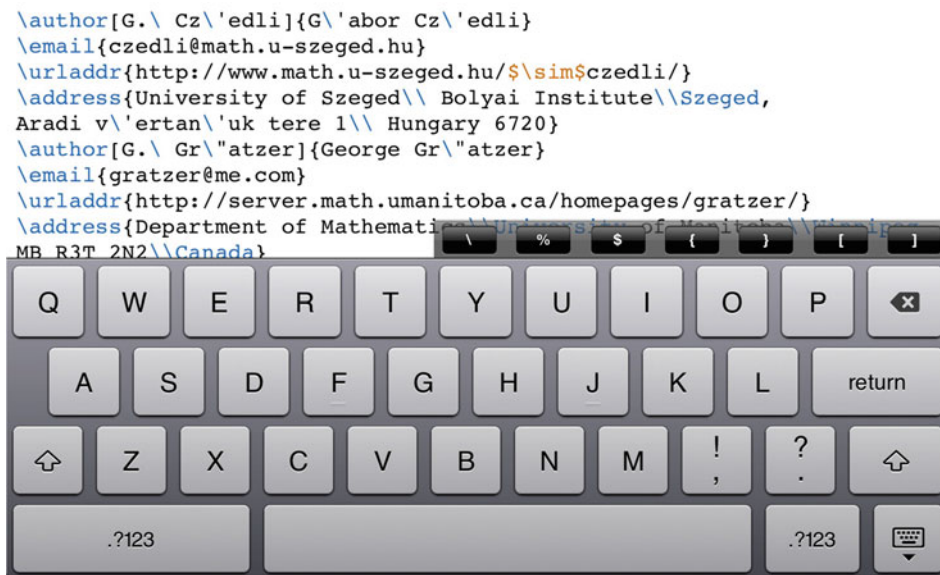


Figure G.8: Editing with soft keyboard

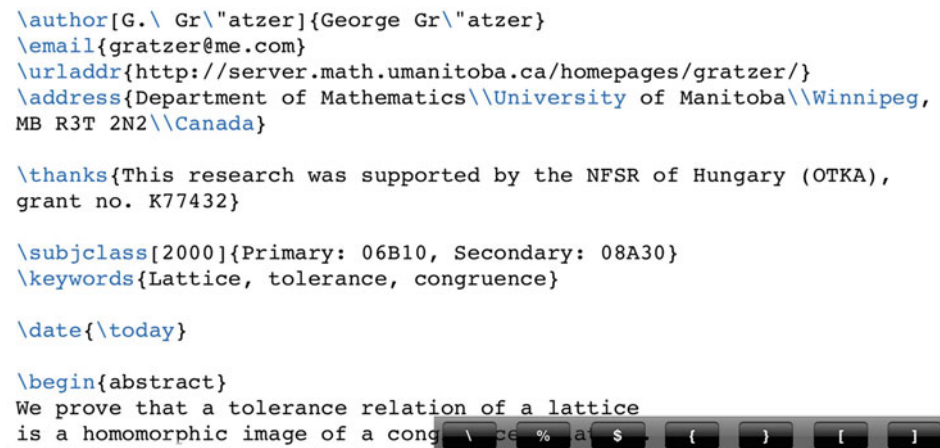


Figure G.9: Editing with Bluetooth keyboard

C. In the Cloud. This option provides you with a remote server, the Cloud; you connect to it with Wi-Fi. The server has a full \LaTeX implementation, so you miss only the special fonts. And, of course, you must have Wi-Fi to use it. So you can polish up your lecture on the airplane on the way to a meeting.

Texpad has some interesting features, including:

- Autocompletion of all common commands and autofilling `\cite-s` and `\ref-s`.
- Replacement of the \LaTeX console with a list of errors and warnings linked to the source.
- Global search, outline view, and syntax highlight.

Step 1. To get started with Texpad, go to the iPad App Store and install Texpad. Sign up for Dropbox with the same e-mail address and password as for your computer's Dropbox.

Step 2. Now open Texpad. Figure G.10 shows Texpad at the first startup. The Help button gets the help file.

Step 3. Touch Off to turn Dropbox On. (If you have Dropbox installed and connected, it's even simpler, you just have to Allow the connection.) Your File Storage now gives two options: iPad and Dropbox (see Figure G.11). It is important to understand that your \LaTeX files will live in the Dropbox (in the Cloud, at the Dropbox server) or locally on your iPad.

Step 4. The Dropbox files are now available to you by touching Dropbox under File Storage, see Figure G.11.

- First, create a folder for the \LaTeX files to be transferred. Navigate to iPad file storage. Touch the + in the bottom right, and choose Folder. Name the folder.
- Second, navigate to the Dropbox file system view and to the folder containing the file you want to copy. Touch Edit. Select the file to transfer. At the bottom center, touch Copy. Navigate to the folder into which you want to copy the file and touch Copy.

Step 5. Typesetting will take place either on the iPad or in the Cloud. Go to the folder of a \LaTeX file, touch the file (on the iPad or in the Dropbox), and typeset it on the iPad (touch Local Typeset) or in the Cloud, that is, at Valletta's server (touch Cloud Typeset).

Step 6. Try to visualize what is happening.

- If you typeset on the iPad and the file is on the iPad, it just typesets locally; that is it.
- If you typeset on the iPad and the file is in Dropbox, the file is transferred to the iPad, typeset, and the resulting pdf is sent back to the Dropbox; nothing is kept at the iPad.
- If you typeset in the Cloud and the file is in Dropbox, the file is transferred to the Cloud, typeset, and the resulting pdf is sent back to the Dropbox; nothing is kept in the Cloud.

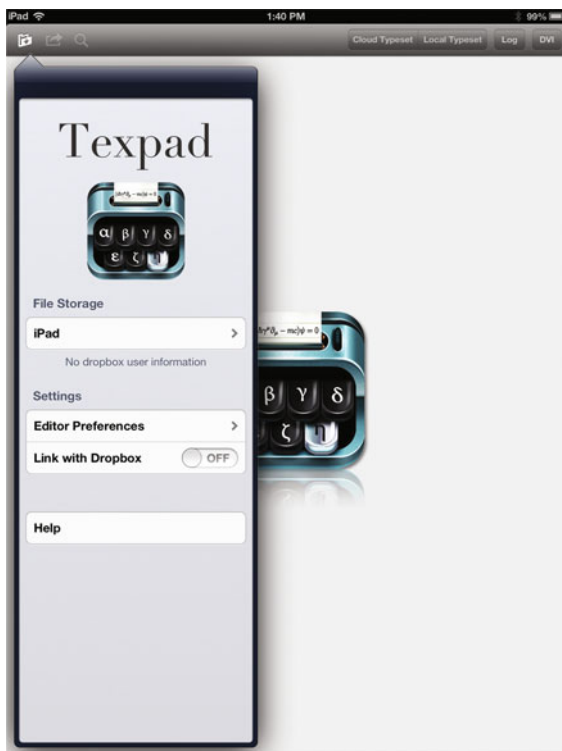


Figure G.10: Texpad first start up

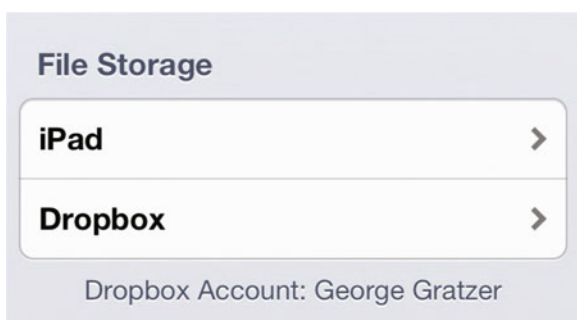


Figure G.11: Expanded File Storage

- If you typeset in the Cloud and the file is on the iPad, the file is transferred to the Cloud, typeset, and the resulting pdf is sent back to the iPad.

Step 7. Once you touch a L^AT_EX file, you are ready to edit it. Cursor control is very important. You do it with a two finger swipe. Of course, this is not so important if you use a Bluetooth keyboard; it has cursor keys.

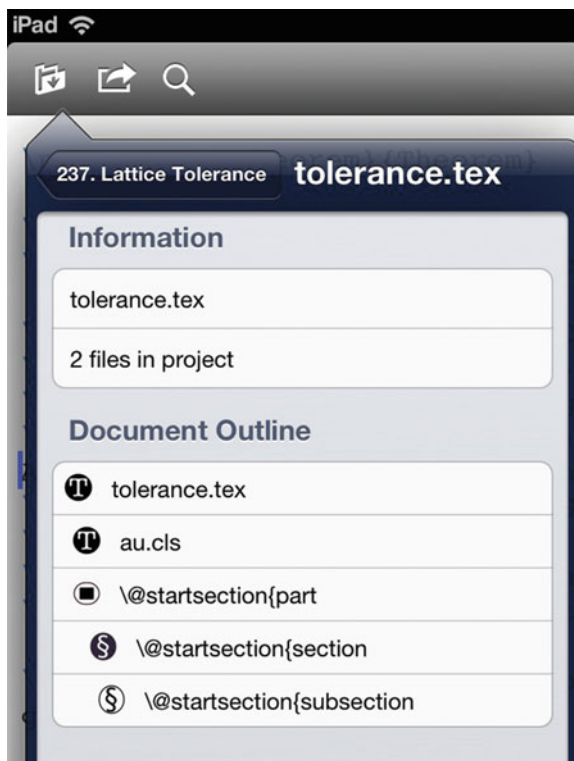


Figure G.12: Organizer window

Step 8. You edited and typeset your \LaTeX file. You want to get to another file. Touch the organize button (the folder icon on the upper left). You get the Organizer window (see Figure G.12). Touch the button in the upper left of the window, you get back to Dropbox, eventually, to the expanded File Storage of Figure 7.

These eight steps should be enough to get you started. Read the detailed Help file for some more information. It is available as a help file and also at

<https://www.texpadapp.com/support/ios>

G.3.2 *TeX Writer*

You get your files via Dropbox, typeset on your iPad. Documentation: `readme.pdf` is no quick start, but it is useful for understanding how TeX Writer works and how to customize it. TeX Writer was the first to typeset on the iPad. It could only typeset TeX files. Now it has \LaTeX and the AMS packages on board.

Step 1. When you start up TeX Writer, first link to Dropbox. In TeX Writer, you get a display showing the source file `readme.tex`; see Figure G.13. Pressing the

More icon (right pointing arrow), you get more icons, to read the pdf version or Air Printing `readme.pdf`. On the left is the Organize icon; touching it, you get a file listing: `readme.tex` and `readme.pdf`. At the bottom is New File; touch it to compose one.

Step 2. So you are perplexed about what to do next, you ran out of icons. You have to know that TeX Writer accesses the Dropbox in a special way. When you connect to Dropbox from TeX Writer, it creates a new folder App in Dropbox. In the folder App it creates the subfolder TeX Writer. In this subfolder you find `readme.tex`. Anything you put in the TeX Writer subfolder is visible in the file listing window on the iPad; anything not in this subfolder is not visible to TeX Writer.

Step 3. TeX Writer gets your files from this subfolder in Dropbox. Place a folder in there with the files of your current project. These will be available to you on your iPad. Moreover, these files are fully synchronized, so the editing changes you make on your iPad show up in Dropbox.

Step 4. \LaTeX ing, you spend most of your time editing. TeX Writer's editor has some interesting features. Excellent cursor control. Touch `begin{}`, type in the name of the environment, and the environment is placed in your document. You also have undo, redo, search, and so on.

When typing, you retain the editing functions you get at the start, and in addition, you get an extra row of \LaTeX specific keys. You do not get them with a Bluetooth keyboard; however, the keyboard can have many of these keys you need for typing \LaTeX . Nice feature: the Log viewer links to error lines.

G.4 Conclusion

Jason Snell was interviewing Craig Federighi, Apple senior vice president of software engineering (and two more executives of Apple), for MacWorld. Snell writes:

“When I walked into Apple’s offices for my conversation with the three executives, they noticed that I had brought a phone, a tablet, and a laptop, and had ultimately selected my MacBook Air as my tool of choice for the interview.

‘You had a bunch of tools,’ Federighi said, pointing at my bag. ‘And you pulled out the one that felt right for the job that you were doing. It wasn’t because it had more computing power... You pulled it out because it was the most natural device to accomplish a task.’ ”

I’m not suggesting that you write all your document on an iPad. I do suggest, however, that you can \LaTeX with ease, say on a trip, correcting a document or adding a slide to your presentation. Use your iPad to \LaTeX when appropriate.

\LaTeX ing on an iPad requires some compromises, for instance, you cannot use nonstandard fonts. Nevertheless, when not at your desk, the iPad will be nearly as functional as your MacBook Air, and it is so much easier to carry around...

And the best is yet to come: the larger iPad will make working on the iPad easier.

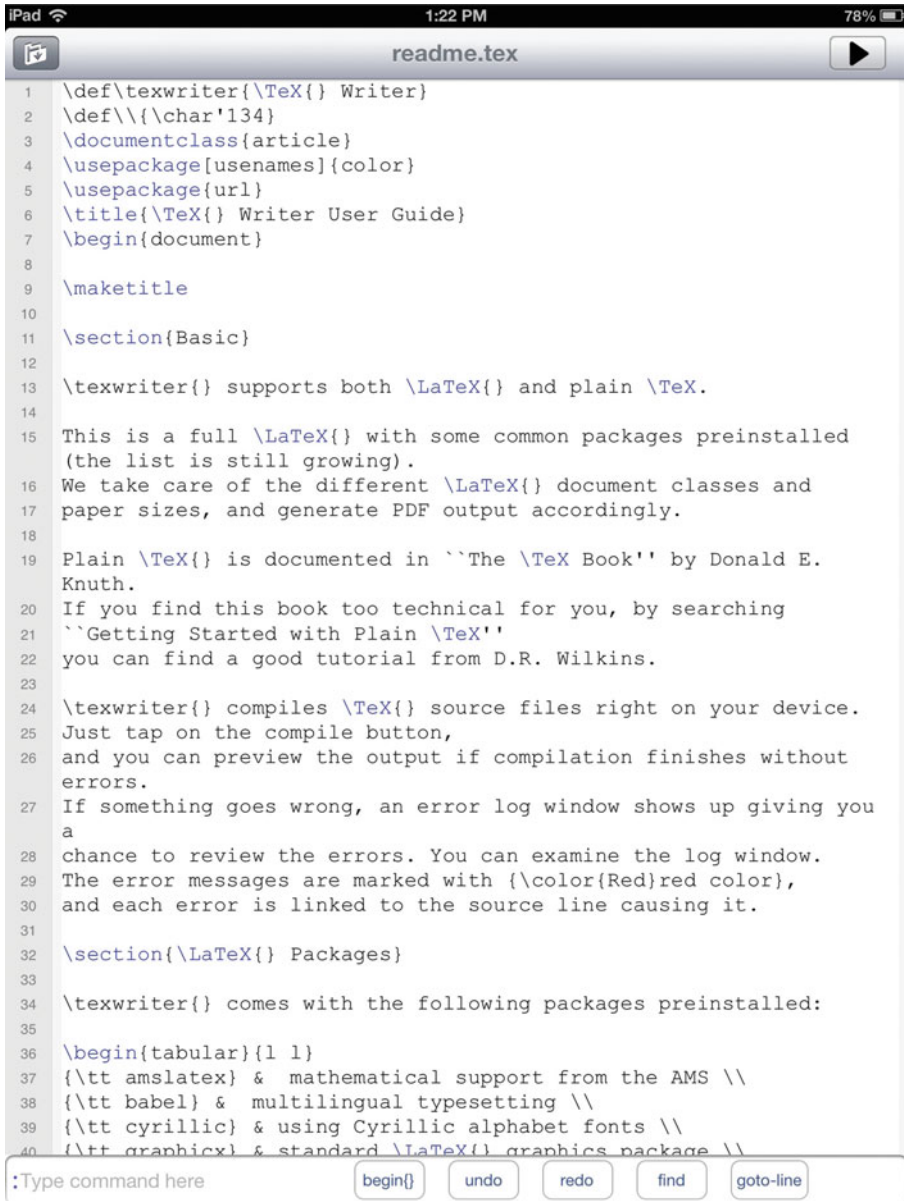


Figure G.13: TeX Writer startup

Final thoughts

In this final appendix, I will outline some of the material I did not discuss and suggest some additional reading to learn more about \LaTeX , typesetting, and writing. We conclude by looking at some projects that may come to fruition soon.

H.1 What was left out?

The mission statement in the introduction stated that my goal for this book was to provide you with a good foundation in \LaTeX including the AMS packages, and that we would not cover programming or visual design. As a result, I have omitted a great deal of material.

H.1.1 \LaTeX omissions

\LaTeX has some additional features that I have not discussed in this book:

1. The `picture` environment allows you to draw simple pictures with lines and circles.
2. The `array`, `tabular`, and `tabbing` environments have a number of additional features.

3. \LaTeX makes the style parameters of a document and of most \LaTeX constructs available to the user for modification. Very few of these parameters have been mentioned in this book.
4. Low-level NFSS commands provide finer control over fonts.

The following are some pointers to additional information on these topics:

1. Drawing with the `picture` environment has the advantage of portability. This environment is described in Leslie Lamport's *\LaTeX : A Document Preparation System*, 2nd edition [53]. A very advanced internal drawing system is TikZ by Till Tantau, see

<http://sourceforge.net/projects/pgf/>

However, I believe that the best approach is to use a drawing application that can save your illustrations in EPS or PDF format so that you can include them in your document using the `graphicx` package (see Section 8.4.3).

2. The `tabbing`, `tabular`, and `array` environments—and their extensions—are described in detail in Leslie Lamport's *\LaTeX : A Document Preparation System*, 2nd edition [53] and Chapter 5 of *The \LaTeX Companion*, 2nd edition [56].
3. The style parameters for \LaTeX are set by the document class. When a publisher changes the document class loaded by your document, the style parameters are set to its specifications. If you explicitly change style parameters in your document, a publisher will have trouble getting your source file to conform to their publishing style. If you must change any basic style parameters, be sure to explain what you did with comments.
4. There are two types of commands defined in the NFSS, high-level and low-level commands. The latter are, by and large, meant for style designers and package writers. Nevertheless, anyone who wants to use fonts other than Computer Modern (the default) would do well to read Chapter 7 of *The \LaTeX Companion*, 2nd edition [56].

Low-level NFSS commands are briefly mentioned in Section 3.6.9 and are used in Appendix E.

H.1.2 \TeX omissions

Almost all discussions of Plain \TeX were omitted from this book. \TeX is a powerful programming language, allowing you to design any page layout or formula. Remember, however, that to change any design feature, you should be knowledgeable not only about \TeX , but also about document design. Also keep in mind that making such changes may make it difficult or impossible for a publisher to make your document conform to its own specifications.

H.2 Further reading

Much documentation is included with the \LaTeX and the AMS distributions and many third-party packages are also well documented. You will also find a great deal of documentation on CTAN.

As you have no doubt noticed, there are many references to *The \LaTeX Companion*, 2nd edition [56] in this book. While it is not a beginner's book, it is indispensable for advanced \LaTeX users with special needs. It is also the best overview of more than a hundred important packages. For package writers and students of NFSS, it is *the* basic textbook. For graphics work, read *The \LaTeX Graphics Companion* [17], and on Web publishing *The \LaTeX Web Companion* [18].

Learning \TeX is a bit more complicated than learning \LaTeX . You may want to start with Wynter Snow's *\TeX for the Beginner* [67]. It introduces many of \TeX 's basic concepts in a very relaxed style with many examples. The notes on \LaTeX make the book especially useful, and the author gives many examples of writing macros. The use of \TeX as a programming language is not discussed.

Raymond Seroul and Silvio Levy's *A Beginner's Book of \TeX* [66] is another good introduction. This book also includes a chapter on \TeX programming. Donald E. Knuth's *The \TeX book* [48] provides a nice introduction to \TeX .

Paul W. Abrahams, Karl Berry, and Kathryn A. Hargreaves' *\TeX for the Impatient* [1] explains many \TeX commands, grouped by topic. This book has a very useful, nonsequential approach. Finally, Victor Eijkhout's *\TeX by Topic: A \TeX nician's Reference* [14] is an excellent reference book on \TeX , mainly for experts. For many tutorial examples, see the articles and columns in *TUGboat* (see Section D.2).

For advice to authors of mathematical articles and books, see *Mathematics into Type* [68] by Ellen Swanson (updated by Arlene Ann O'Sean and Antoinette Tingley Schleyer). You may find it interesting to see how many of the rules in Swanson's book have been incorporated into \LaTeX . The definitive book on style (in North America) is *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th edition [11]. Two other views on copy editing are presented in Judith Butcher's *Copy Editing: The Cambridge Handbook* [9] and *Hart's Rules for Compositors and Readers at the University Press, Oxford* by Horace Hart [45], updated in R. M. Ritter's *New Hart's Rules: The Handbook of Style for Writers and Editors* [64]. The special problems of writing about math and computer science are admirably dissected in Lyn Dupré's *BUGS in Writing: A Guide to Debugging Your Prose*, 2nd edition [13].

Most people who write math have little or no background in typography, the art of printing with type. But when you become a typesetter, it can be useful to learn a little bit about typography. I would highly recommend Robert Bringhurst's *The Elements of Typographic Style* [8]. See also Ruari McLean's *The Thames and Hudson Manual of Typography* [54] and Alison Black's *Typefaces for Desktop Publishing: A User Guide* [6].

Harley Hahn's *A Student's Guide to Unix* [44] provides an excellent introduction to UNIX.

Bibliography

- [1] Paul W. Abrahams, Karl Berry, and Kathryn A. Hargreaves, *T_EX for the Impatient*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1990.
- [2] Adobe Systems, *PDF Reference, Version 1.7*. 1st edition. Adobe Press, 2009.
- [3] American Mathematical Society, *AMSTeX, Version 2.2 User's Guide*. Providence, RI, 1997.
- [4] ———, *User's Guide for the amsmath Package (version 2.0)*. Providence, RI, 1999. (Revised 2002.)
- [5] ———, *Using the amsthm package (version 2.20)*. Providence, RI, 2004.
- [6] Alison Black, *Typefaces for Desktop Publishing: A User Guide*. Architecture Design and Technology Press, London, 1990.
- [7] Johannes Braams, *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L^AT_EX's standard document classes*. 2005, on CTAN.
- [8] Robert Bringhurst, *The Elements of Typographic Style*. Hartley & Marks Publishers, 2004.
- [9] Judith Butcher, Caroline Drake, Maureen Leach, *Butcher's Copy-editing: The Cambridge Handbook for Editors, Copy-editors and Proofreaders*. 4th edition. Cambridge University Press, London, 2006.
- [10] Pehong Chen and Michael A. Harrison, *Index preparation and processing*. Software Practice and Experience **19** (9) (1988), 897–915.
- [11] *The Chicago Manual of Style*. 16th edition. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 2010.
- [12] Michael Doob, *T_EX Starting from 1*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1993.
- [13] Lyn Dupré, *BUGS in Writing. A Guide to Debugging Your Prose*. 2nd edition. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, MA, 1998.

- [14] Victor Eijkhout, *T_EX by Topic: A T_EXnician's Reference*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1991. Free download at <http://www.eijkhout.net/tbt/>
- [15] Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, and Alexander Samarin, *The L^AT_EX Companion*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1994. Second edition 2004.
- [16] Enrico Gregorio, *Horrors in L^AT_EX: How to misuse L^AT_EX and make a copy editor unhappy*, *TUGboat* **26** (2005), 273–279.
- [17] Michel Goossens, Sebastian Rahtz, and Frank Mittelbach, *The L^AT_EX Graphics Companion*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1997.
- [18] Michel Goossens and Sebastian Rahtz (with Eitan Gurari, Ross Moore, and Robert Sutor), *The L^AT_EX Web Companion: Integrating T_EX, HTML and XML*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1999.
- [19] George Grätzer, *Math into T_EX: A Simple Introduction to AMS-L^AT_EX*. Birkhäuser Boston, 1993.
- [20] ———, AMS-L^AT_EX. *Notices Amer. Math. Soc.* **40** (1993), 148–150.
- [21] George Grätzer, *Advances in T_EX implementations. I. PostScript fonts*. *Notices Amer. Math. Soc.* **40** (1993), 834–838.
- [22] ———, *Advances in T_EX implementations. II. Integrated environments*. *Notices Amer. Math. Soc.* **41** (1994), 106–111.
- [23] ———, *Advances in T_EX implementations. III. A new version of L^AT_EX, finally*. *Notices Amer. Math. Soc.* **41** (1994), 611–615.
- [24] ———, *Advances in T_EX. IV. Header and footer control in L^AT_EX*. *Notices Amer. Math. Soc.* **41** (1994), 772–777.
- [25] ———, *Advances in T_EX. V. Using text fonts in the new standard L^AT_EX*. *Notices Amer. Math. Soc.* **41** (1994), 927–929.
- [26] ———, *Advances in T_EX. VI. Using math fonts in the new standard L^AT_EX*. *Notices Amer. Math. Soc.* **41** (1994), 1164–1165.
- [27] George Grätzer, *Math into L^AT_EX: An Introduction to L^AT_EX and AMS-L^AT_EX*. Birkhäuser Boston, 1996. 2nd printing, 1998.
- [28] George Grätzer, *General Lattice Theory*. 2nd edition. Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel, 1998. xix+663 pp.
- [29] George Grätzer, *First Steps in L^AT_EX*. Birkhäuser Boston, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1999.
- [30] George Grätzer, *Pervije Sagi v LaTeX'e*. Mir Publisher, Moscow, 2000. (Russian)
- [31] George Grätzer, *Math into L^AT_EX*. 3rd edition. Birkhäuser Verlag, Boston, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2000. xl+584 pp. ISBN: 0-8176-4131-9; 3-7643-4131-9
- [32] George Grätzer, *Turbulent transition*, *TUGboat* **21** (2001), 111–113.
- [33] ———, *Publishing legacy document on the Web*, *TUGboat* **22** (2001), 74–77.

- [34] G. Grätzer, *More Math into L^AT_EX*. 4th edition. Springer-Verlag, New York, 2007. xxxiv+619 pp.
ISBN-13: 978-0-387-32289-6, e-ISBN: 978-0-387-68852-7.
Kindle Edition 2007, ASIN: B001C3ABDA
- [35] G. Grätzer, *A gentle learning curve for L^AT_EX*. PracTeX Journal Number 3, 2008.
- [36] ———, *What Is New in L^AT_EX? I. Breaking Free*. Notices AMS **56** (2009), 52–54.
- [37] ———, *What Is New in L^AT_EX? II. T_EX implementations, Evolution or Revolution*. Notices AMS **56** (2009), 627–629.
- [38] ———, *What Is New in L^AT_EX? III. Formatting references*. Notices AMS **56** (2009), 954–956.
- [39] ———, *What Is New in L^AT_EX? IV. WYSIWYG L^AT_EX*. Notices AMS **58** (2011), 828–830.
- [40] ———, *What Is New in L^AT_EX? V. L^AT_EX on an iPad. Foundation*. Notices AMS **60** (2013), 332–334.
- [41] ———, *What Is New in L^AT_EX? VI. L^AT_EX on an iPad. Empire*. Notices AMS **60** (2013), 434–439.
- [42] George Grätzer, *Practical L^AT_EX*. Springer-Verlag, New York, 2014.
ISBN: 978-3-319-06424-6
- [43] George Grätzer, *What Is New in L^AT_EX? VII. The STIX math symbols*. Notices AMS **62** (2015).
- [44] Harley Hahn, *Harley Hahn's Student's Guide to Unix*. 2nd edition. McGraw-Hill, New York, 1993.
- [45] Horace Hart, *Hart's Rules For Compositors and Readers at the University Press, Oxford*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1991.
- [46] Uwe Kern, *Extending L^AT_EX's color facilities: the xcolor package*. December 21, 2005.
<http://www.ukern.de/tex/xcolor.html>
- [47] Donald E. Knuth, *The Art of Computer Programming*. Volumes 1–3. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1968–1998.
- [48] Donald E. Knuth, *The T_EXbook*. Computers and Typesetting. Vol. A. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1984, 1990.
- [49] Donald E. Knuth, *T_EX: The Program*. Computers and Typesetting. Vol. B. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1986.
- [50] Donald E. Knuth, *The METAFONTbook*. Computers and Typesetting. Vol. C. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1986.
- [51] Donald E. Knuth, *METAFONT: The Program*. Computers and Typesetting. Vol. D. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1986.
- [52] Donald E. Knuth, *Computer Modern Typefaces*. Computers and Typesetting. Vol. E. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1987.

- [53] Leslie Lamport, *L^AT_EX: A Document Preparation System*. 2nd edition. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1994.
- [54] Ruari McLean, *The Thames and Hudson Manual of Typography*. Thames and Hudson, London, 1980.
- [55] Frank Mittelbach, *An extension of the L^AT_EX theorem environment*. *TUGboat* **10** (1989), 416–426.
- [56] Frank Mittelbach and Michel Goossens (with Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley), *The L^AT_EX Companion*. 2nd edition. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 2004.
- [57] Frank Mittelbach and Chris Rowley, *L^AT_EX 2.09 → L^AT_EX 3*. *TUGboat* **13** (1) (1992), 96–101.
- [58] ———, *L^AT_EX—A new version of L^AT_EX*. *T_EX and TUG NEWS* **2** (4) (1993), 10–11.
- [59] ———, *The L^AT_EX 3 project*. *Euromath Bulletin* **1** (1994), 117–125.
- [60] ———, *L^AT_EX 3 in '93*. *T_EX and TUG NEWS* **3** (1) (1994), 7–11.
- [61] Frank Mittelbach and Rainer Schöpf, *The new font family selection—user interface to standard L^AT_EX*. *TUGboat* **11** (1990), 297–305.
- [62] Oren Patashnik, *BIBT_EXing*. Document in the BIBT_EX distribution.
- [63] ———, *BIBT_EX 1.0*. *TUGboat* **15** (1994), 269–273.
- [64] R. M. Ritter, *New Hart's Rules: The Handbook of Style for Writers and Editors*, Oxford. Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2005.
- [65] Rainer Schöpf, *A new implementation of the L^AT_EX *verbatim* and *verbatim** environments*. *TUGboat* **11** (1990), 284–296.
- [66] Raymond Seroul and Silvio Levy, *A Beginner's Book of T_EX*. Springer-Verlag New York, 1995.
- [67] Wynter Snow, *T_EX for the Beginner*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1992.
- [68] Ellen Swanson, *Mathematics into Type*. Updated edition. Updated by Arlene Ann O'Sean and Antoinette Tingley Schleyer. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1999.
- [69] Till Tantau, *User's Guide to the Beamer Class*. 2005.
<http://latex-beamer.sourceforge.net>
- [70] Gérard Tisseau and Jacques Duma, *TikZ pur l'impatient*, 2015.
<http://math.et.info.free.fr/TikZ/index.html>

Index

Italic numbers indicate figures or tables, *bold* numbers indicate definitions.

- \ (backslash), 145, 498
 - key, 7, 60
 - starts commands, 6, 10, **52**
 - text symbol, 60, 64, 489
- _ (space), 9, 47, **48**
 - and \verb* command, 128
 - in arguments of commands, 68
 - in \bibitem labels, 250
 - in \cite commands, 250
 - in command names, 52
 - in tabular environments, 115
 - text symbol, 499
- _ (space com.), 9, **49**, 54, 84, 170, 500
- ! (exclamation mark), 7, 46
 - float control, **245**, 480
 - in \index commands, 451, 452, 454
- ¡ (exclamation mark, Spanish), 63, 64, 495, 498
- \! (negthinspace), 162, **170**, 170, 493, 500
- \" (" dieresis/umlaut text accent), 7, 11, 63, 496, 526
- " (double quote), 7, **58**
 - in BibTeX database fields, 444, 445
 - in \index commands, 454
 - key, 7, 47, 58
- "ck (European character), 526
- "s (eszett), 526
- #
 - in custom commands, 369, 378
 - key, 7, 47
- \# (# octothorp), 60, 64, 498
- \$
 - as inline math delimiter, 12, 13, 55, 57, **132**
 - act as braces, 132
 - must be balanced, 133
 - in error messages, 37, 38, 127, 133, 134, 136, 216
 - key, 7, 47
- \\$ (\$ dollar sign), **7**, 60, 64, 498
- \$\$
 - in error messages, 37
 - TeX displayed math delimiter, 41, 132
- %
 - as comment character, 8, 45, **67–69**, 121, 276, 455
 - in BibTeX databases, 69, 442
 - key, 7, 47
- \% (% percent), **7**, 45, 60, 64, 69, 498
 - in e-mail addresses, 262
- &
 - as alignment point, 20, 22, 200, 201, 203
 - as column separator, 16, 115, 203, 214, 219
 - key, 7, 47
- \& (& ampersand), 60, 64, 498
- ' (right single quote), 7, 9, 46, **58**, 499
 - for primes ('), 14, 138, 178
- \' (´ acute text accent), 63, 496
- \((start inline math mode), 13, 57
 - acts as special brace, 132, 133
 - must be balanced, 133
- (
 - as math delimiter ((), 145, 489
 - in index entries, 452
 - key, 7, 46
- \) (end inline math mode), 13, 57
 - acts as special brace, 132, 133
 - must be balanced, 133

-)
 - as math delimiter (`()`), 145, 489
 - in index entries, 452
 - key, 7, 46
- * (* asterisk), 60
 - interactive prompt, **95**, 375–377, **511**
 - key, 7, 46
- ** prompt, 511
- *-form
 - of commands, **52**, 80, 83, 85, 87, 109, 110, 128, 178, 179, 225, 235, 304, 371, 374, 381, 384, 438, 465, 467
 - of environments, 136, 185, 195, 197, 199, 213, 243
- + key, 7, 46
- + (plus), 14, 46, 137, 168, 171, 172, 197, 200, 201
 - as binary operation, 486
- + and – rule, **169**, 171, 172, 201
 - and subformulas, 200
 - in `multline` environments, 197
- \, (thinspace), 16, 51, 58, 170, 170, 493, 500
- , (comma), 7, 46
 - and italic correction, 75
 - in `\bibitem` commands, 250
 - in BibTeX databases, 424, 425, 444
 - use in formulas, 135
- (dash, hyphen, minus), 7, 14, 46, 58, 59, 137, 168, 171, 172, 179, 200, 201
 - as binary operation, 486
 - in `\hyphenation` commands, 65
- \- (opt. hyphen), 12, **65**, 65, 79
- (– number ranges, en dash), **11**, **59**, 64, 498
 - in BibTeX databases, 427
- (— em dash), **11**, **59**, 64, 498
- > TikZ rightarrow com., 354–356
- . (period), 7, 46
 - and italic correction, 75
 - in BibTeX databases, 426
- \. overdot text accent (`'`), 63, 496
- \/ (italic correction), **74–75**, 500
 - and font commands, 75
- / (slash)
 - as divisor, 14, 46, 137
 - as math delimiter (`/`), 145, 489
 - key, 7
- \: (medspace spacing com.), 170, 493, 500
- : (colon), 7, 46
 - as binary relation, 41, 47, 171, 483
- \; (thickspace), 170, 493, 500
- ; (semicolon), 7, 46
- < (less than)
 - as binary relation (`<`), 483
 - key, 12, 46
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- <- TikZ leftarrow com., 354–356
- \=
 - macron text accent (`˘`), 63, 496
 - tab set command, 121
- = (equal sign)
 - as binary relation (`=`), 483
 - in BibTeX database fields, 424
 - key, 7, 46
- \> (tabbing com.), 121, 122
- > (greater than)
 - as binary relation (`>`), 483
 - key, 12, 46
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- ?
 - prompt, 511
 - question mark, 7, 46
- ¿ (Spanish question mark), 63, 64, 495, 498
- @ (@ at sign), 7, 47, **60**
 - in BibTeX database (bib) files, 424
 - in `\index` commands, 453, 454
- @-expression, 115
- @. (blank math symbol for comm. diagrams), 223
- \@. (intersentence space), 50, 500
- @<< (stretchable left arrow math sym.), 223
- @= (stretchable equals sign math sym.), 223
- @>> (stretchable right arrow math sym.), 223
- @AAA (stretchable up arrow math sym.), 223
- @VVV (stretchable down arrow math sym.), 223
- @\vert (stretchable double vertical line), 223
- \[(start displayed math mode), 13, 18, 41, **132**, **135**
 - acts as special brace, 132, 136
- [
 - and optional arguments, 18, **52**, 53, 108, 112, 115
 - key, 7, 46
 - math delimiter (`[`), 145, 489
 - with `\item` commands, 102
 - with `\newcommand`, 368
- \] (end displayed math mode), 13, 18, 41, **132**, **135**
 - acts as special brace, 132, 136
-]
 - and optional arguments, 18, **52**, 53, 108, 112, 115
 - key, 7, 46
 - math delimiter (`]`), 145, 489
 - with `\item` commands, 102
 - with `\newcommand`, 368
- {
 - for required arguments, 6, 10, 13, **52**, 53, 138, 364, 506
 - for scoping, 55–57
 - in BibTeX entries, 424, 427

- key, 7, 47
- must be balanced, 36, 38, 55, 60
 - in `\index` commands, 459
 - with `\def`, 377
- `\{`
 - as math delimiter (`{ }`), 41, 145, 489
 - text brace (`{ }`), 60, 64, 498
- `}`
 - for required arguments, 6, 10, 13, **52**, 53, 138, 364, 506
 - for scoping, 55–57
 - in `BIBTEX` entries, 424, 427
 - key, 7, 47
 - must be balanced, 36, 38, 55, 60
 - in `\index` commands, 459
 - with `\def`, 377
- `\}`
 - as math delimiter (`}`), 41, 145, 489
 - text brace (`}`), 60, 64, 498
- `^` (caret)
 - for superscripts, **14**, 16, **138–139**, 141, 161
 - key, 7, 47, 60
- `\^` circumflex text accent (`^`), 63, 64, 496, 498
- `_` (`_` underscore), 7, 60, 64, 498
 - in e-mail addresses, 261
- `_` (underscore)
 - for subscripts, **14**, 16, **138–139**, 141, 155, 161
 - key, 7, 47
- `'` (left single quote), 7, 9, 46, **58**, 499
- `\`` (``` grave text accent), 46, 63, 496
- `\|` (`|` math delimiter), 145, 146, 165, 489
- `~` (tilde)
 - key, 7, 9, 47
 - tie/unbreakable space, **9**, 47, 49, 50, **59**, 59, 81, 500
 - absorbs spaces, 59
 - in `BIBTEX` databases, 427
 - with cross-references, 240
- `\~` (`~` tilde text accent), 60, 63, 496, 499
- 9pt** (doc. class option), **279**
- 10pt** (doc. class option), **86**, **279**, **288**
- 11pt** (doc. class option), **279**, **288**
- 12pt** (doc. class option), **76**, **279**, **288**
- `\` (new line), **79**, **81**
 - and `\kill` commands, 122
 - breaking lines with, 16, 20, 21, 23, 80, 104, 115, 121, 122, 125, 153, 195, 196, 198, 200, 210, 213, 225, 257–261, 278, 286, 291, 340
 - in arguments of commands, **81**
 - in environments, **81**, 104, 125
 - in text, 81
 - optional argument of, **80**, 80, **81**, 225
- `\\`* (new line), **80**, 225
- a4paper** (doc. class opt.), 279, 288
- a5paper** (doc. class opt.), 288
- `\AA` (`Å`), 63, 495
- `\aa` (`å`), 63, 495
- abbreviations
 - in bibliographic entries, 435–436
 - defining, 436
 - periods in, 49–51
 - using small caps for, 74, 474
 - using ties (`~`) with, 50
- above (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351
- Abrahams, Paul W., 545, 547
- absolute
 - names for equations, 20
 - referencing, 20, 99, 186, **240–241**
 - units, 11, 72, 76, 78, 79, 87, 89, 92, 290, 405
- abstract** (text env.), 24, 51, **233**, 268
 - in `beamer` document class, 308
 - in `report` document class, 285
 - placement of, 233, 268
- abstract** (bibl. com.), 425
- `\abstractname` (redef. name), 375
- abstracts, 24, **233**, 308
 - in AMS document classes, 268
 - in `report` document class, 285
 - separate page for, 231, 281
- accents
 - European, 11, **62**, 63, 499
 - hyphenation of words with, 65
 - in bibliographies, 427
 - in `hyperref` titles, 303
 - math, **16**, **154–155**, 163, 164, 283, 375, 477
 - double, **154**
 - text, 7, 11, 53, **62**, 63, 496, 499
- accents** (pack.), 155
- acronyms, using small caps for, 74, 474
- acute (`'` acute text accent), 63, 496
- `\acute` (`á` math accent), 154, 492
- `\addcontentsline` (table of contents com.)
 - and lists of figures and tables, 470
 - arguments of, 468, 470
- adding lines
 - to lists of figures and tables, 470
 - to tables of contents, 467–468, 480
- addition, 14, 46, 137
- `\address` (top matter com.), 277, 308
 - in letters, 291
 - optional arguments of, 260, 261
 - rules for using, 260–261
 - with multiple authors, 264
- address** (`BIBTEX` database field), 424, 425

- addresses
 - in letters, 291
 - of authors in articles, 260, 264, 277
- `\addtocontents` (table of contents com.)
 - and lists of figures and tables, 470
 - arguments of, 468, 470
- `\addtocounter` (counter incr. com.), 403
- `\addtolength` (counter setting com.), 406
- adjusted
 - columns, 193, **214–224**
 - formulas, 194, **214–224**
 - flush left and right, 198
- adjusting
 - interline spacing, **78**, 80–82
 - placement of root with `\sqrt`, 142
- Adobe
 - Acrobat Professional, 300, 303, 307, 477
 - placing hyperlinks in documents, 301
 - Illustrator, 26, 343, 357
 - PostScript (PS), *see* PS
 - Reader, 26, 303, 307, 341, 480
- Adobe Systems, 299–301, 547
- `\AE Aesc` (\mathring{A}), 63, 495
- `\ae aesc` (\mathring{a}), 63, 495
- `\afterpage` (delay com.), 294
- `afterpage` (pack.), 294
- afterwords, of books, 465
- `\aleph` (\aleph Hebrew char.), 144, 481
- `\alert` (beamer text style com.), 319
- `align` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351
- `align` (math align. env.), 20–22, 22, 22, 41, 192, 193, 194, **202–207**, 212, 213, 477, 504
 - annotated, 193
 - page breaks in, 224
- `align*` (math align. env.), 22, 204, 409
- `alignat` (math align. env.), 41, 192, 194, **207–208**
 - argument of, 208
- aligned
 - formulas, **20–22**, 191–194, 202–208, 212, 214–215, 224, 280, 504
 - text in, 208–210
 - math environments, 224
 - `align`, 20–22, 41, 192, 194, **202–207**, 212, 213, 224
 - `alignat`, 41, 192, 194, **207–208**
 - and `\verb` commands, 128
 - `eqnarray`, 205
 - `flalign`, 192, 194, **205**, 213
 - inserting lines of text in, 208
 - intercolumn space in, 191
 - subsidiary math environments, 210–214
 - `aligned`, 194, 210–212
 - `alignedat`, 210–212, 222
 - `split`, 192, 194, **212–214**, 280
- `aligned` (subsid. math align. env.), 194, 210–212
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 225
- `alignedat` (subsid. math align. env.), 210–212, 222
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 225
- alignment
 - of columns in `tabular` environments, 115, 116, 295
 - of formulas, *see also under* adjusted, 202–214
 - annotated, 23, 193
 - commands for, 198
 - flush left and right, 191
 - multiline, 20–23, **200–201**, **203**
 - simple, 21, 20–22, 22
 - of large symbols, 211–212
 - of text, 51, 88, **104**, 114, 210, 408
 - centering, 6, 10, 41, **104**, 104, 114, 116, 210, 309, 416
 - command declarations for, **104**, 116
 - flush left, 10, 104
 - flush right, 10, 88, 104
 - with `trivlist` environments, 416
 - of text boxes, vertical, 93
 - point for subformulas ($\&$), 20, 22, 23, 200, 201, 203
 - within text boxes, 89, 93
- `allowdisplaybreaks` (display break com.), **224**
 - and subsidiary math environments, 225
 - optional argument of, 225
- `alltt` (disp. text env.), 139, 293
- `alltt` (pack.), 127, 293, 510
- `\Alph` (uppercase letter counter style com.), 402
- `\alph` (lowercase letter counter style com.), 402
- `\alpha` (α Greek char.), 144, 482
- `alpha` (BIB \TeX style), 428
- alphabets (counter styles), 402
- alphabets, math, 179, **178–179**
 - blackboard bold, 161, **180**, 390, 492
 - calligraphic, 165, **180**, 283, 390, 492
 - Euler Fraktur, 160, 162, **180**, 283, 390, 492
 - Euler Script, **283**, 284, 390, 492
 - Greek, 180
 - symbol, **180–182**
- alphanumeric keys, 7
- `\amalg` (\amalg math op.), 486
- ampersand ($\&$)
 - as alignment point
 - for annotations, 22, 23
 - for subformulas, 20, 22, 200, 201, 203

- as column separator, 16, 115, 203
- text symbol, 60, 64, 498
- AMS (American Mathematical Society), xxv, 505, 521
- AMSFonTS, *see* AMSFonTS
- article templates, 275–278
- bibliographies
 - database files, 436
 - fields, 425
 - sample files, 436, **436–438**
 - styles, **250, 421**, 422, 426, 436–438
- distribution, 255, 282, **282–284**, 379, 436, 437, 501
- document classes, *see* document classes
- environments, *see* displayed math environments, subsidiary math environments, *and* text environments
- subject classifications, 263
- technical support provided by, 519
- top matter
 - AMS specific information, 263–264
 - article information, 257–259
 - author information, 259–263
 - commands, **257–268**, 277
 - examples of, 265–268
 - rules for, 259–263
 - with multiple authors, 264–265
- Web site, 263, 519
- $\backslash\text{AmS}$ ($\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ logo com.), 62
- AMS package distribution, 255, 282, **282–284**, 307, 379, 418, 436, 437, 501
- $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}\text{-}\text{\LaTeX}$, 503, 504
 - history of, 501–505
 - version 1.0, 504
 - version 1.1, 504
 - two-letter font commands, **77**
 - version 1.2, 504
 - version 2.0, 504
- AMS- \TeX , **502**, 504
 - history of, 501–505
- amsalpha (BIB \TeX style), 428
- amsart (doc. class), 32, 40, 65, 104, 133, 173, 231–233, 236, **255–284**, 463, 466, 506, 512
 - anatomy of, 23
 - and numbered lists, 98
 - front matter of, 268
 - sample article, 104, 109, 111, 213, 251, 257, **268–272**, 275, 370, 375, 382, 421, 436, **436, 394–442**, 512
 - top matter of, 233
- amsart.tpl (sample file), 275
- amsbook (doc. class), xxviii, 32, 235, 376, 463, **464–466**, 506
 - for exercises, 470
- amsbsy (pack.), 282–284
- amscd (pack.), 222–224, 282
- AMSFonTS, 281, **283**
 - document class options for, 281–282
 - PostScript versions of, 281, 283, 504, 510
 - technical support for, 519
 - updates to, 510
- amsfonts (pack.), **283**
 - options, 283
- amsgen (pack.), 282, 283
- amslatex (L \TeX distr. directory), 293, 294, 518
- amsmath (pack.), 32, 214, **282**, 282–284, 405, 504, 510
 - document class options affecting, 280–281
 - options, 280
- amsmath.sty (AMS distr. file), 386
- amsmidx (pack.), 284
- $\backslash\text{AMSname}$ (hyperref redef. name), 305
- amsopn (pack.), 282, 283
- amspain (BIB \TeX style), 422, 436–438
- amspain.bst (BIB \TeX style file), **421**, 422, 426, 437, 438, 445
- amsproc (doc. class), 257, 376, 506
- amsproc template (AMS sample template file), 279
- amsrefs, 446
 - creating typeset bibliography, 446
- amssymb (pack.), 160, 276, 282, 283, 373
- amstext (pack.), 283
- amsthm (pack.), 32, 283
- amsxtra (pack.), 154, 155, 282, 283
- $\backslash\text{And}$ (& math op.), 486
- $\backslash\text{and}$, top matter command, 286, 288
- and, in bibliographies, 426
- $\backslash\text{angle}$ (\angle math sym.), 488
- annotations
 - alignment of, 22, 23
 - of formulas, 207
- apalike (pack.), 436
- apostrophe ('), 9, 46
 - key, 14, 178
- appendices, 237, 465
 - numbering of, 237, 465
- $\backslash\text{appendix}$ (struct. com.), 237, 465
- $\backslash\text{appendixname}$ (redef. name), 376
 - and hyperref package, 305
- $\backslash\text{approx}$ (\approx binary rel.), 483
- $\backslash\text{approxeq}$ (\cong binary rel.), 484
- $\backslash\text{arabic}$ (numeric counter style com.), 402, 403, 412
- arc (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 349
- $\backslash\text{arccos}$ (arccos math op.), 149, 490
- $\backslash\text{arcsin}$ (arcsin math op.), 149, 490
- $\backslash\text{arctan}$ (arctan math op.), 149, 490

- `\arg` (arg math op.), 149, 490
- arguments
 - and tokens, 506
 - empty (`{ }`), 54, 139, 157, 169, 177, 188, 263, 291
 - long, **57**
 - movable, 57, 469
 - negative, 84, 142
 - of commands, *see also under* specific commands, *see also under* specific commands, 309, 316, 331, 332, 336
 - of commutative diagram symbols, 223
 - of custom commands, 368–371
 - multiple, 368, 370
 - optional, 372
 - short, 371–372
 - of custom environments
 - optional, 379, 382–384
 - short, 384
 - of environments, *see also under* specific environments
 - of top matter commands, *see also top matter*, 256, 257, 263–265, 268
- optional, 55, 81, 83, 94–96, 105, 141, 142, 157, 216, 225, 232
 - multiple, 53
 - of commands, 100, 102, 103, 107, 183, 184, 250, 260–263, 329, 401, 403, 410, 411, 416, 470
 - of environments, **53**, 105, 108, 112, 115, 212, 225, 244, 245, 383, 480
 - of sectioning commands, 235, 467
 - of structural commands, 237, 464
 - of TikZ commands, 344
 - of top matter commands, 257–265
 - use square brackets (`[]`), 18, **52–53**, 103, 112, 115, 268
- required, 93, 94, 157, 177, 256, 257, 512
 - multiple, 13, 53, 117, 174, 176, 177, 254, 293, 378, 406, 407
 - of commands, 13, **53**, 117, 174, 176, 177, 239, 254, 263, 406, 468, 472, 496
 - of environments, **53**, 115, 207, 208, 219, 220, 247–248, 250, 291, **383–384**, 470
 - use braces (`{ }`), 6, 10, 13, **52**, 53, 506
- short, **57**
- single character, 53
- spacing within, 13, 68, 89, 134, 142, 160, 174, 176, 459
- specifying zero in, 96
- arithmetic
 - operations, 14–15, 137–139
 - with counters, 295, **403–404**
 - with length commands, 295, **406**
- around (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 352
- `array` (subsid. math env.), 192, 194, 212, 215, **218–221**, 221, 294, 503
 - arguments of, 219, 220
- `array` (pack.), 294
- arrays, 16–17, 218–221
- `\arraystretch` (table com.), 119
 - adjusting vertical spacing with, 119
- `arrow` (TikZ tikz-cd pack. com.), 354–356
- arrows, math, 156, 168, 222, 487
 - as delimiters, 145, **146**, 489
- ARTICLE (bibl. entry type), 424, 428
- article (doc. class), 25, 32, 173, 231, 233, 256, 284, 285, 288, **285–290**, 376, 506
 - bibliographies in, 247, 249
 - sectioning commands provided by, 236
- articles
 - bibliographies in, **245–251**, 423, 436, **436–438**, 445
 - creating templates for, 275–278
 - in BibTeX database files, 428–429, 435
 - sectioning of, **234–237**
 - top matter information
 - AMS specific, 257–268
 - AMS subject classifications, 263
 - author addresses, 260, 264, 277
 - author names, 259, 277
 - contributor, 260
 - current addresses, 261, 265
 - dedications, 259
 - e-mail addresses, 261, 264, 277
 - Internet addresses, 262, 264, 277
 - keywords, 264, 278
 - research support, 262, 264, 277, 286
 - title, 257, 278
- `\ast` (`*` math op.), 486
- asterisk (`*` text symbol), 64, 498
- `\asymp` (\asymp binary rel.), 483
- at sign (`@`)
 - in BibTeX database (bib) files, 424
 - in `\index` commands, 453, 454
- `\author` (top matter com.), 231, 286, 288, 313, 466
 - multiple authors in, 286
 - optional arguments of, 259, 313
- author (BibTeX database field), 424
- authors
 - information about
 - in AMS top matter, 259–264
 - multiple
 - in AMS documents, 264
 - in bibliographies, 426
 - in documents, 286
 - names of
 - in articles, 259, 277

- in running heads, 259
- AutomaTeX
 - L^AT_EX app for iPad, 534
- automatic
 - numbering, 18, 20, 34, 99, 105, 213, 234
 - renumbering, 19, 34, 512
- \autoref (hyperref cross-ref. com.), 302, 302, 304
 - names supported by, 305
- aux (aux. files), 34, 34, 439, 469, 480
 - symbolic references recorded in, 508
- auxiliary files, 34, 470, *see also* aux, bbl, bib,
 - blg, bst, glo, idx, ilg, ind, lof, log, lot, out, *and* toc, 480, 508
 - names of, 508
 - polishing, 480
- \b (_ underscore text accent), 63, 496
- b5paper (doc. class opt.), 288
- babel (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 293
- babel (pack.), 294, 525–526
 - options, 526
- babybeamer1.pdf (sample file), 315–317
- babybeamer2.tex (sample file), 315
- babybeamer3.tex (sample file), 320
- babybeamer4.tex (sample file), 325
- babybeamer5.tex (sample file), 321
- babybeamer6.tex (sample file), 324, 325
- babybeamer6block.tex (sample file), 325
- babybeamer7.tex (sample file), 325, 327–329
- babybeamer8.tex (sample file), 329
- babybeamer9.tex (sample file), 331
- babybeamer10.tex (sample file), 341
- back matter, 231, **245–252**, 465
 - bibliographies in, 231
 - index in, 448
 - numbering of chapters in, 465
- \backepsilon (≍ binary rel.), 484
- \backmatter (struct. com.), 465
- \backprime (\ math sym.), 488
- backref (pack.), 302, 303
- backref (opt. of hyperref pack.), 302, 303
- \backsim (~ binary rel.), 484
- \backsimeq (≃ binary rel.), 484
- \backslashash (\ math delimiter), 145, 489
- backslash (\ text symbol), 64, 498
- badness, 507
- balancing
 - braces, 55, 60
 - errors with, 55–57
 - in \index commands, 459
 - inline math delimiters, 133
 - math delimiters, 146, 200
- \bar (\bar math accent), 16, 154, 155, 164, 492
- bar, vertical (| text symbol), 64, 498
- \barwedge ($\bar{\wedge}$ math sym.), 486
- base (L^AT_EX distr. directory), **293**, 293
 - packages in, 293
- base names (of files), 508
- baseline, of text, 78, 90
 - adjusting with `setspace`, 81
- \baselineskip (length com.), **78**, 83
- \baselinestretch (length com.), 81
- \Bbbk (\mathbb{k} math sym.), 488
- bbl (proc. bibl. files), 445, 446
- beamer (doc. class), *see also under* presentations, 307–342
 - abstracts in, 308
 - color in, 330
 - commands
 - \beamergotobutton, 326
 - \breakhere, 332
 - \color, 321, 330
 - \colorbox, 331
 - \fcolorbox, 331
 - \frametitle, 27–29, 309, 310, 326
 - \hyperlink, 325
 - \institute, 308
 - \note, 336
 - \only, 315–317, **319–321**, 325
 - \onslide, 315, 317, **319–321**, 324, 325
 - \pause, 29, 85, **315**, 315, 319
 - \setbeamercolor, 332
 - \setbeamertheme, 336
 - \tableofcontents, 310
 - \textcolor, 330
 - \usecolortheme, 339
 - \usefonttheme, 340
 - \usetheme, 26, 310, 339
 - documentation for, 307, 341
 - installation of, 308
 - options
 - handout, 341
 - notes=only, 338
 - notes=show, 336
 - trans, 336, 341
 - xcolor=dvipsnam, 331
 - preamble in, 26, 308–309
 - sections in, 310
 - sidebars, 310
 - sidebars in, 310
 - table of contents in, 310
 - themes, 26, 310, **338–340**
 - top matter in, 26, 308–309
- \beamergotobutton (beamer com.), 326
- beamerstructure.tex (sample file), 333, 336
- \because (\because binary rel.), 484
- \begin (start of env.), **51**, 51, 55, 56
- below (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 348, **351**
- Berkeley (beamer theme), 310, 313, 314, 339

- Berry, Karl, 522, 545, 547
 - font-naming scheme, 522
- `\beta` (β Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\beth` (\beth Hebrew char.), 144, 481
- `\between` (\between binary rel.), 484
- Bezoz, Javier, 155, 503
- `\bf` (obs. \LaTeX 2.09 font com.), 77, 78
- `\bfseries` (font weight com. dec.), 55, 56, 57, 73, 76, 77, 78, 103, 496
- `bfseries` (font weight env.), 103
- `bib` (\TeX database files), 421, **423–436**, 439
 - accents in, 427
 - AMS, 436, **436–438**
 - commas (,) in, 424, 425, 444
 - comments in, 442
 - cross-referencing within, 432–433
 - delimited with parentheses (()), 424
 - delimiters in, 424
 - double quote (") in, 444, 445
 - en dashes (–) in, 427
 - entries
 - abbreviations in, 435–436
 - capitalization in, 427
 - Jr. in, 426
 - multiple authors in, 426
 - von in, 426
 - entry types, 423–436
 - case-sensitivity of, 425
 - start with @, 424
 - equals signs (=) in, 424
 - fields in, 425, 431–433, 435
 - adding your own, 425
 - case-sensitivity of, 425
 - optional, 425, 428–435
 - required, 425, 428–435
 - rules for typing, 425–436
 - termination of, 444
 - used by AMS bibliography styles, 425
 - location of, 439
 - number ranges in, 427
 - numbers in, 424
 - periods (.) in, 426
 - portability of, 426
 - samples of, 423, 436, 445
 - ties (unbreakable spaces) in, 427
- `\bibcite` (aux. file com.), 508
- BibDesk bibl. manager, 445, 446
- `\bibitem` (bibl. com.), 19, 248
 - commas in, 250
 - labels for, 247
 - optional argument of, 250
 - spaces in, 250
- `bielatex` (pack.), 446
- bibliographies, 24, **245–251**
 - AMS support for, 436, **436–438**
 - appear in back matter, 231
 - citing references from, 19, **250, 438**
 - as hyperlinks in PDF files, 302
 - with \TeX , 438
 - commands for, 436, 438
 - defining, 50, **245–251**, 373, 408, **423–436**
 - document class options affecting, 290, 290
 - entries made in auxiliary files for, 508
 - examples of, **245–247, 421–423**
 - in articles, 423, 436, 445
 - multiple, in a document, 251
 - numbering of, **248**
 - portability of, 426, 428
 - sample files for, 423, 436, **437–438**, 445
 - styles, 422, 436
 - AMS, **250**, 422, 426, 436, 438
 - templates, 245
 - with `amsrefs`, 446
- `\bibliography` (bibl. com.), 53, 437, **438**
- bibliography managers
 - BibDesk, 445, 446
 - BibTexMng, 445, 446
 - Ebib, 445
 - JBibtexManager, 445
 - pybibliographer, 445
- `\bibliographystyle` (bibl. com.), 437, **438**
- `\bibname` (redef. name), 251, 376
- \TeX , 303, 421–446
 - AMS support for, 436
 - citing references with, 438
 - commands, **436**, 438
 - log files, *see* `blg`
 - running, 436–445
 - sample files for, 423, 436, **437–438**
 - style files, *see* `bst`
 - styles, 422, 426, 436, 438
- \TeX 1.0 (Patashnik), 550
- \TeX ing (Patashnik), 445
- BibTexMng bibl. manager, 445, 446
- `\Big` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\big` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\bigcap` (\bigcap large math op.), 152, 491
- `\bigcirc` (\bigcirc math op.), 486
- `\bigcup` (\bigcup large math op.), 152, 491
- `\Bigg` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\bigg` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\Bigl` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\biggl` (math delim. size com.), 147, 164
- `\biggm` (math delim., as binary rel. size com.), 148
- `\Biggr` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\biggr` (math delim. size com.), 147, 164
- `\Bigl` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\bigl` (math delim. size com.), 147

- `\bigrm` (math delim., as binary rel. size com.), 148
- `\bigodot` (\bigcirc large math op.), 152, 491
- `\bigoplus` (\bigoplus large math op.), 152, 491
- `\bigotimes` (\bigotimes large math op.), 152, 491
- `\Bigr` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\bigr` (math delim. size com.), 147
- `\bigskip` (spacing com.), 40, 86
- `\bigsqcup` (\bigcup large math op.), 152, 491
- `\bigstar` (\star math sym.), 488
- `\bigtriangledown` (∇ math op.), 486
- `\bigtriangleup` (\triangle math op.), 486
- `\biguplus` (\uplus large math op.), 152, 491
- `\bigvee` (\bigvee large math op.), 152, 491
- `\bigwedge` (\bigwedge large math op.), 152, 491
- binary operations, 168, 169, 178, 486
 - + and – rule, 171, 197, 200
 - adding white space around, 135
 - and alignment of displayed formulas, 201
 - and breaking displayed formulas, 197, 200, 201
 - created with `\overset`, 176
 - created with `\underset`, 162
 - defining, 178
 - and subformulas, 200
 - for congruences, 151
- binary relations, 41, 148, 161, 168, 169, 171, 483, 484
 - adding white space around, 135
 - and alignment of displayed formulas, 201
 - and breaking displayed formulas, 201
 - created with `\overset`, 162, 176
 - defining, 178
 - delimiters as, 148
 - math delimiters as, 148
 - negated, 161, 177, 485
- `\binom` (math com.), 15, 139
- binomial coefficients, 15, 139
 - in inline and displayed math environments, 139
- bitmap fonts, 521
- Black, Alison, 545, 547
- blackboard bold (math alphabet), 161, 180, 390
- `\blacklozenge` (\blacklozenge math sym.), 488
- `\blacksquare` (\blacksquare math sym.), 488
- `\blacktriangle` (\blacktriangle math sym.), 488
- `\blacktriangledown` (\blacktriangledown math sym.), 488
- `\blacktriangleleft` (\blacktriangleleft binary rel.), 484
- `\blacktriangleright` (\blacktriangleright binary rel.), 484
- blank
 - lines
 - in bibliographies, 303
 - in displayed math environments, 37, 134, 136, 198
 - in inline math environments, 134
 - in text environments, 40, 98, 98
 - in top matter commands, 257
 - in verbatim environments, 126
 - terminating paragraphs with, 9, 40, 48, 82, 98, 124, 303
- math delimiters, 146, 162
- math symbol for commutative diagrams (\circlearrowright), 223
- `blg` (BIB_{TEX} log files), 441
- `block` (beamer env.), 324–325
- Blue Sky Research, 505, 521
- blue spaces, *see also* tie, unbreakable spaces, nonbreakable spaces, 59
- `bm` (pack.), 295
- `Bmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 217
- `bmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 217
- `\bmod` (mod math op.), 151, 151, 486
- body
 - of books, 465
 - of documents, 8, 24, 51, 157, 230–252
 - of environments, 51
 - of page, 252
 - of presentations, 309
- bold
 - font weight, 10, 72, 73, 76, 77, 78, 103, 143, 164, 179, 179, 180, 283, 390, 496
 - math symbols, 181–182, 282, 295
- `\boldsymbol` (math font weight com.), 164, 180, 181, 282, 492
- BOOK (bibl. entry type), 424, 429–430
- book (doc. class), xxviii, 32, 235, 376, 463, 466, 464–466, 468, 504, 506
- BOOKLET (bibl. entry type), 424, 435
- `bookmarks=true` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 302
- bookmarks, in PDF documents, 303
- books
 - bodies of, 465
 - document classes for, 32, 235, 463, 464–466, 468, 470, 504, 506
 - options of, 466
 - final preparation of, 476–480
 - in BIB_{TEX} database files, 429–430
 - logical design of, 473–475
 - numbering of structures in, 464
 - sectioning of, 464–465, 473
 - structure of, 465
 - top matter of, 233
 - writing with L_AT_EX, 463–480
- `booktabs` (pack.), 120
- `booktitle` (BIB_{TEX} database field), 425, 433
- `\bot` (\bot math sym.), 488
- bottoms, of text boxes, 407
- `\bowtie` (\bowtie binary rel.), 483
- `\Box` (\square math sym.), 488

- `\boxdot` (\boxdot math op.), 486
- boxes, 89–96
 - and length commands, 407
 - around formulas, 189
 - commands for measuring, 407
 - invisible, *see* struts
 - multiline, 89
 - paragraph, 92–93
 - solid, 95, *see also* struts
 - text, 89–96
 - alignment of contents in, 89, 93
 - behave as single characters, 89
 - commands for, 13, 18, 65, 66, 81, **89**, 89–96, 118, 120, 134, 142–143, 160, 161, 189, 224, 283
 - environments for, 89, 91, 93, 382, 383
 - fine tuning placement of, 96
 - framed, **91–92**
 - measurements of, 407
 - single line, 89–90, 142
 - vertical alignment of, 93, 96
 - vertical alignment of, 93
- `\boxminus` (\boxminus math op.), 486
- `\boxplus` (\boxplus math op.), 486
- `\boxtimes` (\boxtimes math op.), 486
- Braams, Johannes, xxix, 503, 525, 547, 550
- braces
 - must be balanced, 36, 55, 56, 60, 70, 159, 459
 - special, 13, 55, 56, 132, 133, 136
 - cannot overlap, 55–57
 - environments act as, 55
 - stretchable horizontal, 155–156
- braces, curly (`{ }`), 6, 10, 13, 14, 52, 53, 55, 138, 139, 161, 169, 188, 200, 201, 263, 268, 364, 379
 - and command declarations, 366
 - as math delimiters, 41, 145, 489
 - define scope, 55–57
 - in `BIBTEX` entries, 424, 426, 427, 435
 - in `\index` commands, 459
 - in text (`{ }`), 60, 64, 498, 506
 - unbalanced, 36, 38, 60
 - with `\def`, 377
- brackets, square (`[]`), 7, 46
 - as math delimiters, **15**, 145, 489
 - breaking formula lines within, 201
 - enclose optional arguments, 18, **52–53**, 103, 112, 115, 145, 313
 - with `\newcommand`, 368
- `\breakhere` (beamer com.), 332
- breaking
 - formulas, *see under* formulas
 - lines, *see under* lines
 - paragraphs, *see under* paragraphs
- breve (˘ text accent), 63, 496
- `\breve` (˘ math accent), 154, 492
- Bringinghurst, Robert, 50, 545, 547
- browsers, *see under* Internet
- `bst` (`BIBTEX` style files), **421**, 422, 426, 437, 438
 - determine use of fields, 425
 - form of citations created by, 428
 - location of, 439
- `\bullet` (\bullet math op.), 486
- bullet (\bullet text sym.), 64, 498
- bulleted lists, 99
- `\Bumpeq` (\approx binary rel.), 484
- `\bumpeq` (\approx binary rel.), 484
- Butcher, Judith, 545, 547
- `\bysame` (bibl. com.), **250**, 373
- `\c` (¸ cedilla text accent), 63, 496
- `\copyright` (copyright text sym.), 64, 498
- `calc` (pack.), 295, 404, 407
- calligraphic (math alphabet), 165, **180**, 283, 390, 492
- `\Cap` (\mathbb{C} math op.), 486
- `\cap` (\cap math op.), 486
- capitalization, in bibliographic databases, 250
- `\caption`, 37
 - in figures, 243
 - in tables, 26, 242
 - optional argument of, 470
- captions, 114, 470
 - in figures, 243
 - in lists, **100**, 470
 - in tables, 26, 242
 - multiple, 242
- caret (ˆ), 60
- Carlisle, David, xxix, 103, 116, 240, 243, 302, 366, 503, 550
- caron (ˆ text accent), 63, 496
- case-sensitivity
 - of `BIBTEX` fields and entry types, 425
 - of command names, **52**
 - of environment names, **52**
 - of `\label` arguments, 239
 - of sort keys in `\index` commands, 459
- cases (subsid. math env.), 22–23, 192, 194, **221–222**
 - page breaks in, 224
- `\ccname` (redef. name), 376
- CD (subsid. math env.), 222–224
- `\cdot` (\cdot math op.), 14, **137**, 486
- `\cdots` (centered ellipsis), 41, **140**, 166
- cedilla (¸ text accent), 63, 496
- ceiling math delimiters, 145, 489
- `center` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351

- `center` (text align. env.), **6**, 41, 88, **104**, 114, 210, 408
 - breaking lines in, 104
 - L^AT_EX definition of, 416
- `\centerdot` (· math op.), 486
- centered ellipses, **15**, 140
- `\centering` (alignment com. declaration), **104**, 210, 309
- centering text, 6, 10, 41, 104
 - in columns in `tabular` environments, 115
 - in presentations, 309
 - in tables, 114, 116
- `centertags` (doc. class opt.), **280**
- centimeter (cm abs. unit), 87, 89, 92, 405
- `\cfrac` (math com.), **183**
- `\chapter` (struct. com.), 235, 237, 286, **464**
 - arguments of, 464
 - numbering of
 - equations in, 464
 - in front and back matter, 465
- `chapter` (counter), 401, 402
- `chapter` (BIB_TE_X database field), 425
- `\chaptername` (redef. name), 376
- and `hyperref` package, 305
- chapters
 - document class options to set start pages for, 466
 - grouping into parts, 464
 - in BIB_TE_X database files, 435
 - in books, 464
 - numbering of, in front and back matter, 465
- characters, *see also* glyphs
 - accented, 7, 11, 46, 53, **62**, 65, **154–155**, 163, 303, 418, 427
 - European, 11, **62**, 495–496
 - following `verbatim` environments, 126
 - Greek, 144, 161, 388–390, 482
 - Hebrew, 144, 481
 - invalid, 7, 47
 - math, 12, 46
 - special, **7**, **47**, **60–61**
 - accessing with `\symbol`, 61, 293
 - in `\index` commands, 454
 - treating text boxes as, 89
- `\check` (ẋ math accent), 154, 492
- checkers, spelling, 35
- Chen, Pehong, 447, 460, 547
- `\chi` (χ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\circ` (o math op.), 486
- `\circeq` (≐ binary rel.), 484
- `circle` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), **345**, 345–349, 353
- `\circlearrowleft` (↺ math arrow), 487
- `\circlearrowright` (↻ math arrow), 487
- `\circledast` (⊗ math op.), 486
- `\circledcirc` (⊙ math op.), 486
- `\circleddash` (⊖ math op.), 486
- `\circledS` (⊞ math sym.), 488
- circumflex (ˆ)
 - text accent, 63, 496
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- citations, bibliographic, 19, 40, 237, **248**, **438**
 - created by BIB_TE_X styles, 428, **438**
 - hyperlinks in PDF files, 302
 - showing in margins, 240
- `\cite` (bibliographic com.), 19, 40, 237, **248**
 - multiple citations, 250
 - optional argument of, 250
 - showing contents, in margin, 295
 - showing labels in margins, 240
 - spaces in, 250
 - with BIB_TE_X, 438
- classes, document, *see* document classes
- classification of math symbols, **168–169**, 178
- `\cleardoublepage` (page breaking com.), 83
- `cleardoublepage.sty` (sample file), 83
- `\clearpage` (page breaking com.), **83**, 84, **245**
- clients
 - FTP, 516
- `\cline` (table com.), 117–118, 118
- Cloud and iPad, 529, 538
- `cls` (doc. class files), 232, 375, 412
- `\clubsuit` (♣ math sym.), 488
- CM (Computer Modern) fonts, *see* Computer Modern fonts
- cm (centimeter abs. unit), 87, 89, 92, 405
- `cmr10.tfm` (T_EX font metric file), 506
- coefficients, binomial, *see* binomial coefficients
- collections, in BIB_TE_X database files, 431–432
- `\colon` (⋮ math com.), 41, 47, **171**
- colophons, of books, 465
- color
 - in presentations, 330–332
 - in TikZ graphics, 354
- `\color` (beamer com.), 321, 330
- `\colorbox` (beamer com.), 331
- `colorlinks` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 302, 303
- `column` (beamer env.), 329
- columns
 - double
 - document class options for, 281, 289
 - figures spanning, 243
 - footnotes in, 295
 - tables spanning, 243
 - in presentations, 329–330
- math
 - adjusted, 214–224
 - adjusting with `flalign` environment, 205

- columns (*cont.*)
 - in aligned formulas, 202–214
 - specifying in `matrix` subsidiary environments, 216
 - multiple, **84**, 295, 503
 - separator (`&`), 16, 115, 203
 - width of, in `tabular` environments, 116
- columns (`beamer` env.), 329
- combining
 - document class options, 290
 - encapsulators in `\index` commands, 452
- command declarations, **57**, **104**, 116, 210
 - affecting multiple paragraphs, 73
 - do not take arguments, 57
 - for fonts, *see* font command declarations
 - scope of, **73**, **366**, 381
 - using in custom commands, 73, **366**
- command files, *see also* `sty` files and packages, 232, **364**, **385–394**
 - commands in, 385
 - terminating, 394
- commands, 51–58, 173
 - `*-ed` form, **52**, 80, 83, 85, 87, 109, 110, 128, 178, 179, 225, 235, 304, 371, 374, 381, 384, 438, 465, 467
 - arguments of, *see under* arguments or specific commands, 309
 - as tokens, 506
 - custom, *see* custom commands
 - defining, *see* custom commands
 - delimited, *see* delimited commands
 - for boxes, *see under* boxes
 - for expanding values, **62–64**, 69, 70, 94, 403
 - for filling horizontal space, **88**, 95, 106, 165, 216, 218, 416
 - for fonts, *see* font commands
 - for graphics, *see under* graphics
 - for indexing, *see under* indexing
 - for presentations, *see under* presentations, `beamer`, *see under* presentations, `beamer`, and `FoilTeX`
 - for tables, *see under* tables or floats
 - fragile, 57–58
 - protecting, **57**, 234, 235, 464, 469
 - generalized, *see* custom commands
 - global, *see under* scope
 - in preamble, *see under* preamble
 - length, *see* length commands
 - local, *see under* scope
 - logical design using, 35
 - long, 57
 - names of, 52
 - case-sensitivity of, **52**
 - primitive, *see* primitive commands
 - providing, 373
 - redefining, 373
 - scope of, *see under* scope
 - sectioning, *see* structural commands
 - short, **57**, 73, 257, 268
 - defining, 371–372
 - spacing, *see* spacing commands
 - start with `\`, 6, 10, **52**
 - structural, *see* structural commands
 - terminating, 13, **52**, **134**
 - `TeX`, *see under* `TeX`
 - text style, *see* text style commands
 - to avoid using, 77, 475
 - types of, 57–58
 - user-defined, *see* custom commands
- commas (`,`), 7, 46
 - and italic correction, 75
 - in `\bibitem` commands, 250
 - in `BibTeX` databases, 424, 425, 444
 - use in formulas, 135
- `comment` (`comment` env.), **69–70**, 295, 386, 503
 - locating errors with, 70
 - nesting, 69
- comments, **8**, 67–70
 - block comment, 69, 472
 - creating with `%` characters, 68, 69, 121, 276
 - creating with `comment` environments, **69–70**
 - finding errors using, 37, 69, 365, 386
 - in `BibTeX` database files, 69, 442
 - inserted using `kill` command, 121
 - marginal, **94–95**, 478
 - in double-sided documents, 94
 - in equations, 94
 - in multiline math environments, 94
 - space between, 405
 - width of paragraph box for, 94
 - removing end-of-line characters with, 67, 68, 455
- common errors, 39–41
- commutative diagrams, **222–224**, 282
- `comp.text.tex` (newsgroup), 519
- `\complement` (`\math sym.`), 488
- components
 - building formulas from, 157–160
 - of formulas, 14–18, 137–160
 - of pages, 252
- Comprehensive `TeX` Archive Network, *see* CTAN
- Computer Modern (CM) fonts, **72**, 72, 76, 522, 523
 - bold extended, 72
 - ligatures in, 62
 - math bold italic, 179
 - math italic, 179
 - PostScript versions of, 31, 503, 505, **521**

- roman, 72, 179, 506
- sans serif, 72
- typewriter, 61, 61, 72
- conference proceedings, in BibTeX database
 - files, 424, 430–432
- `\cong` (\cong binary rel.), 483
- congruences, 15, 151
 - as binary operations, 151
- consecutive numbering, of proclamations, 107–108
- contents, table of, *see under* tables
- `\contentsline` (toc file com.), 467
- `\contentsname` (redef. name), 376
- context, affects style of emphasized text, 74
- continued fractions, 183
- `\contrib` (top matter com.), 260
- `contrib` (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 517
- `controls` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 350
- controls, float, 114, **244–245**
- converting
 - files to PDF, 301
 - from articles to presentations, 308
- Cook, Tim, 529
- `\coprod` (\coprod large math op.), 152, 491
- `\copyright` (\copyright copyright), 64, 498
- corner math delimiters (\llcorner , \lrcorner , \ulcorner , \urcorner), 145, 489
- corollaries, *see* proclamations
- correction, italic, *see* italic correction
- `\cos` (cos math op.), 149, 490
- `\cosh` (cosh math op.), 149, 490
- `\cot` (cot math op.), 149, 490
- `\coth` (coth math op.), 149, 490
- counters, 103, 216, 377, **400–404**
 - and `\include` commands, 401
 - and `\label` commands, 403
 - and proclamations, 400
 - arithmetic with, 295, **403–404**
 - defined in preamble, 402
 - defining, 401
 - incrementing, 403
 - L^AT_EX, 402
 - linking with other counters, 401, 403
 - names of, 108
 - store numbers, 400
 - styles for, 70, 103, 382, 402, **402–403**, 412
 - values of, 34, 70, 402
 - printing, **62–64**, 94, **403**
 - setting, 401, 403
 - with `list` environments, 412
- Courier, in L^AT_EX documents, 522
- `covers.pdf` (sample file), 25
- Crémer, Jacques, 344
- cross-referencing, **237–242**, **251**, 304
 - among multiple documents, 296
 - and automatic renumbering, 19, 34, 512
 - entries made in auxiliary files for, 508
 - in indexes, 455
 - in `proof` environment titles, 112
 - inside presentations, 310
 - labels for, **19**, 22, 26, 37, 40, 69, 187, 199, 213, 234, **237**, 241, 242, 251, 403
 - of equations, 18–20, 22, 40, 136, 187, 202, 238
 - groups of, 201–202
 - in multiline math environments, 199
 - of list items, 99, 103
 - of tables, 114
 - page numbers, 19, 22, **241**, 251, 478, 508
 - with `varioref` package, 295
 - section numbers, 22, 103, 112, 114, 136, 199, 234, **237**, 238, 283, 508
 - using ties (\sim) with, **50**, 240
 - within BibTeX databases, 432–433
- `crossref` (BibTeX database field), 425
- `\csc` (csc math op.), 149, 490
- CTAN (Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network), 292, 515, **516–518**, 519, 522, 524
 - catalogue, 517
 - mirrors of, 517
 - packages on, 461, 518
 - URLs for, 516
- `\Cup` (\mathcal{C} math op.), 486
- `\cup` (\cup math op.), 486
- `\curlyeqprec` (\preccurlyeq binary rel.), 484
- `\curlyeqsucc` (\succcurlyeq binary rel.), 484
- `\curlyvee` (\vee math op.), 486
- `\curlywedge` (\wedge math op.), 486
- `\curraddr` (top matter com.), 261
 - rules for using, 261
- `\curvearrowleft` (\curvearrowleft math arrow), 173, 487
- `\curvearrowright` (\curvearrowright math arrow), 173, 487
- custom commands, 39, **362–379**, 474
 - arguments of, 368–372
 - as shorthand, 362–372
 - as tokens, 506
 - command declarations in, 73
 - scope of, **366**, 381
 - defining, 70, 81, 112, 119, 250, 251, 362, 364, 371–375, 403
 - in preamble, 232
 - delimited, 377–379
 - for environments, 364
 - for indexing, 369–370, 452
 - for subformulas, 370–371
 - for text, 364
 - invoking, 364
 - multiple arguments of, 53
 - optional arguments of, 372
 - rules, 364, 365
 - short arguments, 371–372

- custom commands (*cont.*)
 - with `\def`, 377
- custom environments, **379–384**, 473, 476, 506
 - defining, 380
 - for custom lists, 408–416
 - optional arguments of, 383–384
 - short arguments, 384
- customizing, 362, 385
 - article templates
 - for AMS document classes, 275–278
 - preambles of, 275
 - top matter of, 275
 - indentation of text, 86
 - L^AT_EX, 361–418
 - dangers of, 416–418
 - lists
 - and counters, 412
 - defining new, 408–416
 - theorem styles, 111
- cyrillic (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 293
- cyrillic (pack.), 294
- `\d` (, underdot text accent), 63, 496
- `\dag` († dagger)
 - math symbol, 488
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- `\dagger` († math op.), 486
- `\daleth` (⧫ Hebrew char.), 144, 481
- dashed (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353, 354, 356
- dashes, 46
 - em dash (—), **11, 59**, 64, 498
 - en dash (–), **11, 59**, 64, 498
 - in BIB_TE_X databases, 427
- `\dashleftarrow` (\leftarrow math arrow), 487
- `\dashrightarrow` (\rightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\dashv` (\dashv binary rel.), 483
- databases, BIB_TE_X, *see also* bib, 421, **423–436**, 439
- `\date` (top matter com.), 64, 231, 259, 286, 466
 - with letter document class, 291
- `\datename` (redef. name), 376
- dates
 - commands for, 10, 54, **62–64**, 526
 - L^AT_EX release, 68, 233, 509
 - of packages, 510
- Davey, Brian, 39
- `\day` (time com.), 63
- `\dbinom` (display-style binomial com.), 139
- `dcolumn` (pack.), 116, 295
- `\ddag` (‡ dagger)
 - math symbol, 488
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- `\ddagger` (‡ math op.), 486
- `\ddddot` ($\ddot{\ddot{x}}$ math accent), 154, 492
- `\dddot` ($\ddot{\ddot{x}}$ math accent), 154, 492
- `\ddot` (\ddot{x} math accent), 154, 492
- `\ddots` (\ddots diagonal ellipsis), 140, 218
- decimals, alignment on, 116, 295
- declarations, command, *see* command
- declarations
 - `\DeclareMathOperator` (op. def. com.), 39, 178, 179, 182, 232, 282, 374
 - `\DeclareMathOperator*` (op. with limits def. com.), 178, 374
- declaring, types of math symbols, 178
- `\dedicatory` (top matter com.), 259
- `\def` (T_EX com.), 418
 - defining commands with, 39, 377
 - overwriting previously defined commands with, 377
- definition (procl. style), **109**, 109–111
- `\deg` (deg math op.), 149, 490
- `delarray` (pack.), 295
- delimited commands, 377–379
 - invoking, 378
- delimiters
 - for displayed math environments, 13, 18, 41
 - for inline math environments, 13, 57, 132–133
 - for `\verb` commands, 127
 - in BIB_TE_X database files, 424
 - math, *see* math delimiters
- `\Delta` (Δ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\delta` (δ Greek char.), 144, 482
- depth
 - of tables of contents, 404
 - of text boxes, 90, 93, 407, 407
- `\depth` (length com.), **90**, 90, 93
- description (text list env.), 98, 100–101
- design
 - logical, 35, 229
 - of books, 473–475
 - of document classes, 502
 - visual, 35, 229, 252–254, 340
- `\det` (det math op.), 150, 490
- device independent files, *see* DVI files
- `\dfrac` ($\frac{x}{y}$), 137, **165**, 183
- `\DH` (Eth Eur. char.), 499
- `\dh` (eth Eur. char.), 499
- `\diagdown` (\diagdown math sym.), 488
- diagonal ellipses, 218
- diagrams, commutative, *see* commutative diagrams
- `\diagup` (\diagup math sym.), 488
- `\Diamond` (\Diamond math sym.), 488
- `\diamond` (\diamond math op.), 486
- `\diamondsuit` (\diamond math sym.), 488
- dieresis, *see* umlaut

- diesis (§)
 - math symbol, 486, 488
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- `\digamma` (f Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\dim` (dim math op.), 149, 490
- dimensions, *see also* measurements
 - units for measuring, 11, 72, 76, 78, 79, 87, 89, 92, 170, 290, 405, 493
 - with length commands, 405
- directories, *see under* AMS and L^AT_EX
 - distributions
- `\displaybreak` (display break com.), 225
 - optional argument of, 225
- displayed formulas, *see* displayed math
 - environments, *see* displayed math environments
- displayed fractions, *see under* fractions
- displayed math environments, 16, 18–23, 41, **132**
 - `\[` (start math mode), 13, 41, **132**
 - Visual Guide to*, **191**, 192
 - `\]` (end math mode), 13, 41, **132**
 - act as special braces, 132
 - `align`, 20–22, 22, 22, 41, 192, 194, **202–207**, 212, 213, 224
 - `align*`, 22, 204, 209
 - `alignat`, 41, 192, 194, **207–208**
 - blank lines in, 37
 - breaking pages in, **224–225**
 - `displaymath`, 132, 134–136, 213
 - `eqnarray`, 205
 - equation, 18, 22, 136, **135–136**, 185, 213, 310
 - `equation*`, 18, **136**, 136, 185, 213, 310
 - `flalign`, 192, 194, **205**, 213
 - font size in, 182
 - `gather`, 41, 192, 194, 195, **195–196**, 202, 213, 224
 - `gather*`, 195
 - in direct succession, 476
 - inline-style binomials in, 139
 - `multline`, 192, 194, **196–198**
 - `multline*`, 197–198
 - subequations, **186**, 187, 202, 403
- displayed text environments, 97, 123–127
 - `alltt`, 139, 293
 - blank lines in, 98
 - `multicols`, 84, 503
 - quotation, **124**
 - `quote`, 40, **123**
 - tabbing, **121–123**
 - `tabular`, 61, **113–120**, 220, 242, 294, 295, 503
 - `theorem`, 35, 105, 108, 324, 383
 - `verbatim`, **125–127**, 128, 295
 - `verse`, **124–125**
 - `xcb`, 470
- `displaymath` (disp. math env.), 132, 134–136, 213
- `\displaystyle` (math font size com.), **182**, 187
- dissertations, in B^IB^TE^X database files, **433**
- distributions
 - AMS packages, 255, 282, **282–284**, 307, 379, 418, 436, 437, 501
 - L^AT_EX, 61, 68, 240, 285–290, **292–296**, **505**, 505, 509, 510, 517, 518, 525
 - PSN^FSS, 522–523
 - T_EX, 505
- `\div` (÷ math op.), **137**, 486
- `\divideontimes` (⋈ math op.), 486
- division, 14, 46, 137, 171, 486
- `\DJ` (Dyet Eur. char.), 499
- `\dj` (dyet Eur. char.), 499
- doc (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 293
- document (text env.), 8, 51, 157, 230
- document class options
 - 9pt, **279**
 - 10pt, **86**, **279**, **288**
 - 11pt, **279**, **288**
 - 12pt, **76**, **279**, **288**
 - a4paper, 279, 288
 - a5paper, 288
 - are passed on to packages, 232
 - b5paper, 288
 - centertags, **280**
 - combining, 290
 - draft, 79, 231, 281, **289**
 - executivepaper, 288
 - final, 281, 289
 - fleqn, 133, **279**, 290
 - for AMSFonts, 281–282
 - for bibliographies, **290**, 290
 - for double-column documents, 281, 289
 - for double-sided printing, 281, 289, 466
 - for font sizes, 279, 288
 - for page orientation, 289
 - for position of equation numbers, 279, 289–290
 - for start of chapters, 466
 - for title pages, 281, 289, 466
 - handout, 341
 - landscape, 289
 - legalpaper, 68, 279, 288
 - leqno, **279**, 289
 - letterpaper, 279, 288
 - noamsfonts, 281
 - nomath, **282**
 - notitlepage, **281**, 289, 466
 - onecolumn, 281, 289

- document class options (*cont.*)
 - oneside, **281**, 289, 466
 - openany, 466
 - openbib, **290**, 290
 - openright, 466
 - psamsfonts, 281
 - reqno, **279**, 289
 - tbtags, **280**
 - titlepage, 231, **281**, 289, 466
 - trans, 341
 - twocolumn, 68, 84, 243, **281**, 289, 290, 295
 - twoside, 68, 231, **281**, 289, 290, 466
- document classes, 35, 65, 214, 376, 506
 - amsart, **255**, 23–284, 463, 466, 506, 512
 - amsbook, xxviii, 32, 235, 463, 466, 470, 506
 - amsproc, 257, 506
 - anatomy of, 23
 - article, 25, 32, 173, 231, 233, 236, 247, 249, 256, 284, 285, 288, **285–290**, 506
 - beamer, 307–342
 - book, xxviii, 32, 235, 463, 466, 468, 504, 506
 - changing, 513
 - cls files, 232, 375, 412
 - design of, 502
 - determine
 - placement of equation numbers, 279–280, 289–290
 - position of equations, 279, 290
 - spacing, 84
 - for books, 32, 235, 463, **464–466**, 468, 470, 504, 506
 - options of, 466
 - for presentations, *see under beamer*
 - legacy, 98, 231, 236, 247, 256, 284, 287, **285–296**, 506
 - letter, 290–292, 506
 - proc, 506
 - proc-l, 256
 - report, 235, 285, 288, **285–290**, 506
 - sample, 8
 - sample.cls, 8
 - slides, 285, 506
- document font families, 6, 10, 73, **72–73**, **76**, **103**, 143, 282, 390, 414, 496, 522
 - normal, 73
 - roman, **72**, 522
 - sans serif, **72**, 522
 - typewriter style, **72**, 522
- documentation
 - for beamer document class, 307, 341
 - for L^AT_EX, 293
 - packages, 294
 - \documentclass (preamble com.), 5, 24, **53**, 68, 160, 222, 231, 276, 308, 336, 344
 - and \NeedsTeXFormat command, 232
- documents
 - body of, 8, 24, 51, 157, **230–252**
 - cross-referencing among multiple, 296
 - design of, 252–254
 - L^AT_EX, 229–254
 - on the Internet, 299–305
 - using AMS document classes in, 255
 - legacy, 301
 - master, 471–473
 - preamble of, 231–233
 - printing and viewing, 6, 301, 507
 - readability of, 76, 340
 - scanning originals, 301
 - splitting into multiple files, 471–473
- dollar sign (\$), *see also* \$ and \\$, **7**
 - as inline math delimiter, 12, 13, 57, **132**, 132, 498
 - as text symbol, 60, 64
- Doob, Michael, 91, 344, 505, 547
- \dot (\dot{x} math accent), 154, 492
- \doteq (\doteq binary rel.), 483, 484
- \dotfill (space fill com.), 88
- dotless i and j (i and j), **62**, 63, 496
- \dotplus ($\dot{+}$ math op.), 486
- dots
 - filling lines with, 88
- \dots (... math ellipsis com.), 15, 41, 62, 139–140, 166
- \dotsc (... math com.), 140
- \dotsc (... math com.), 140
- \dotsc (... math com.), 140
- \dotsc (... math com.), 140
- \dotsc (... math com.), 140
- dotted (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 350, 353
- double accents, in math, **154**
- double acute ($\ddot{~}$ text accent), 63, 496
- double dagger (\ddagger)
 - math symbol, 486, 488
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- double guillemet, 499
- double quote ("), *see also* quotation marks, 7, **58**, 64, 498
 - in \index commands, 454
 - in BibT_EX database fields, 444, **445**
 - key, 7, 47, 58
- double spacing, 81–82
- double subscripts and superscripts, font size of, 182
- double vertical lines in CD environments, 223
- double-column
 - documents
 - and footnotes, 295

- document class options for, 68, 281, 289
- figures and tables, 243
- double-sided printing
 - and marginal comments, 94
 - document class options for, 68, 281, 289, 466
- `\doublebarwedge` ($\overline{\wedge}$ math op.), 486
- `\doublecap` (\mathbb{M} math op.), 486
- `\doublecup` (\mathbb{U} math op.), 486
- `\doublespacing` (setspace com.), 82
- `\Downarrow` (\Downarrow)
 - math arrow, 487, 489
 - math delimiter, 145
- `\downarrow` (\downarrow)
 - math arrow, 487
 - math delimiter, 145, 489
- `\downdownarrows` (\Downarrow math arrow), 487
- Downes, Michael, 446, 503, 504
- `\downharpoonleft` (\lrcorner math arrow), 487
- `\downharpoonright` (\llcorner math arrow), 487
- `draft` (doc. class opt.), 79, 231, 281, **289**
- `\draw` (TikZ graphics com.), **346**, 353
- drivers
 - printer, 34, 294, 301, **507**, 517
 - video (DVI viewer), 507
 - video), 34
- Dropbox file transferring, 531, 534, 538, 540
- Duchier, Denys, 503
- Duma, Jacques, 357, 550
- Dupré, Lyn, 67, 547
- DVI files, 507, 517
 - printing, 507
 - viewing, 507
- `dvipdf` (opt. of hyperref pack.), 301
- `dvipdfm` (opt. of hyperref pack.), 301
- `dvipdfmx` (opt. of hyperref pack.), 301
- `dvips` (opt. of hyperref pack.), 301
- `dvipsnam` (opt. of xcolor pack.), 331
- `dvipsone` (opt. of hyperref pack.), 301
- `dviwindo` (opt. of hyperref pack.), 301
- dyet (Eur. char), 499
- Ebib bibl. manager, 445
- editing cycle, 5
- `edition` (BIBTeX database field), 425
- `editor` (BIBTeX database field), 425
- editors, text, 5, 6, 12, 32, 36, 47, 67, 71, 363, 533
- Eijkhout, Victor, 545, 548
- electronic mail address, *see* `\email`
- `\ell` (ℓ math sym.), 488
- `ellipse` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 348, 349, 351
- ellipses (...)
 - centered (\cdots), **15**, **140**
 - diagonal, 218
 - in math, **15**, **139–140**, 216
 - in text, **62**
 - vertical, 218
- `\em` (font shape com. dec.), 73, 74, 75, 103, 366, 381, 496
- `em` (font shape env.), 103
- `em` (rel. unit), 405, 493
- `em dash` (—), **11**, **59**, 64, 66, 498
- EM fonts, *see* European Modern fonts
- Emacs, 445
- `\email` (top matter com.), 261–262, 265–267, 277
 - rules for using, 261–262
- `\emph` (font shape com.), 6, 10, 51, 73, **74**, 319, 496
- emphasized (font shape), 6, 10, 19, 51, 73, **74**, 75, **103**, 105, 136, 366, 381, 496
 - and italic correction, 75
 - context dependence of, 74
- `empty` (page style), 252
- `empty group` ($\{ \}$), 54, 139, 157, 169, 177, 188, 263, 291
- `\emptyset` (\emptyset math sym.), 488
- `en dash` (--), **11**, 64, 66, 498
 - in BIBTeX databases, 427
- `\encname` (redef. name), 376
- encodings, font, *see* font encodings
- `\end` (end of env.), **51**, 51, 55
 - errors with, 56, 126, 472
- `end angle` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 349
- `\endinput` (input ending com.), 394, **472**
- `eng` (Eur. char), 499
- `\enlargethispage` (spacing com.), **83**, 478, 480
- `\enlargethispage*` (spacing com.), 83
- `\ensuremath` (math mode com.), **367**, 368, 373
- Enter key, *see* Return key
- entries
 - glossary, *see under* glossaries
 - index, *see under* indexing
- `enumerate` (list text env.), 295, 382
- `enumerate` (pack.), 103, 295, 382, 386
- `enumi` (counter), 103, 402
- `enumii` (counter), 402
- `enumiii` (counter), 402
- `enumiv` (counter), 402
- environments, 6, 10, 13, **51–58**
 - *-ed forms, 136, 185, 195, 197, 199, 213, 243
 - act as braces, 55
 - arguments of, *see under* arguments or specific environments
 - \backslash in, 104, 125
 - begin with `\begin`, **51**, 55

- environments (*cont.*)
 - body of, 51
 - case-sensitivity of names of, **52**
 - custom, *see* custom environments, *see*
 - custom environments
 - end with `\end`, **51**, 55
 - font size, 103
 - for figures and graphics, *see under* `TikZ`
 - for presentations, *see under* `beamer` and `FoilTeX`
 - for tables, *see* tables
 - indenting contents of, in source file, 135
 - legacy, 103, 123–125, 408
 - list, *see* list text environments, *see* list text environments
 - logical design using, 512
 - typesetting environment names, 512
 - math, *see under* inline and displayed math environments, subsidiary math environments, and displayed text environments
 - modifying, 380–382
 - `\newline` in, 81
 - operating, *see under* Windows computer, Mac, and UNIX
 - short, 384
 - subsidiary math, *see* subsidiary math environments
 - visual design using
 - typesetting environment names, 512
- EPS (Encapsulated PostScript)
 - files, 471
- `\epsilon` (ϵ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\eqcirc` (\approx binary rel.), 484
- `\eqnarray` (math align. env.), 205
- `\eqref` (cross-ref. com.), **19**, 22, 40, 136, 187, 199, 202, 237, 238, 248, 310, 369
- `\eqslantgtr` (\gtrless binary rel.), 484
- `\eqslantless` (\leqslant binary rel.), 484
- equals (=)
 - binary relation, 46, 483
 - in BibTeX database fields, 424
 - key, 7
- equation (counter), **400**, 402
- equation (disp. math env.), 18, 22, **135–136**, 185, 213, 310
 - blank lines in, 136
- equation* (disp. math env.), 18, **136**, 136, 185, 213, 310
- `\equationname` (`hyperref` redef. name), 305
- equations, 18–20
 - document class options for placement of numbers, 279–280, 289–290
 - grouping, 186–187
 - in multiline math environments, 198
 - in presentations, 310
 - labels for, 19, 238
 - marginal comments in, 94
 - numbering of, **18–20**, 40, **135–136**, 185, 195, 196, 199
 - groups, 201–202
 - in chapters of books, 464
 - preventing, 21, 22, 136, 185, 195, 196, 199, 201, 213
 - variants, **186**, 202
 - within sections, 18, 136, 232
 - position of, 279, 290
 - systems of, 208
 - tagging, 20, **185–187**, 195, 196, 199, 201, 212, 213
- `\equiv` (\equiv)
 - binary relation, 483
 - math operator, 15, 151, 162, 370, 379
- error messages
 - Missing `\right.` inserted, 200
- errors
 - common, 39–41
- eszett (β , SS), 63, 495, 526
- `\eta` (η Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\eth` (\eth math sym.), 488
- eth (Eur. char), 499
- eucal (pack.), 283, 284, 385, 492
 - options, **283**, 391, 492
- eufрак (pack.), 283
- Euler Fraktur (math alphabet), 160, **180**, 283, 390, 492
- Euler Script (math alphabet), **283**, 284, 390, 492
- European
 - accents, 11, **62**
 - characters, 11, **62**, 495–496, 499
 - quotation marks, 499
- European Modern (EM) fonts, 504
- `every picture` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 347
- ex (rel. unit), 405
- examples
 - of bibliographies, **245–247**, **421–423**
 - of indexes, 448–450
 - of nonbreakable spaces (`\sim` spacing com.), 59
 - of top matter commands, 265–268
- `\except` (table of contents com.), 467
- exclamation marks (!), 7, 46
 - as float control, **245**, 480
 - in `\index` commands, 451, 452, 454
 - Spanish (¡), 63, 64, 495, 498
 - terminating sentences with, 48–51
- `executivepaper` (doc. class opt.), 288
- exercises, 470
 - in books, 470
 - within a section, 470

- `\exists` (\exists math sym.), 488
- exiting, from interactive mode, 511
- `\exp` (exp math op.), 149, 490
- expanding values of counters, 62, 64, **403**
- `exscale` (pack.), 283, 293
- extensibility of \LaTeX and \TeX , 31

- Fairbairns, Robin, 503
- `\fallingdotseq` (\approx binary rel.), 484
- `fancyhdr` (pack.), 254, 515, 518
- FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions), 517, 519
- `\fboxrule` (length com.), 92
- `\fboxsep` (length com.), 92
- `\fcolorbox` (beamer com.), 331
- `fd` (font def. file), **522**, 523, 524
- Fear, Simon, 120
- fields, bibliographic, *see under* `bib`
- `figure` (counter), 402
- `figure` (float env.), **243–244**, 309, 344, **343–344**
 - optional arguments of, 244, 480
 - placement of, 478, 480
- `figure*` (float env.), 243
- `\figurename` (redef. name), **375**, 376
 - and `hyperref` package, 305
- figures, **243–244**, **343**
 - captions in, 470
 - fragile commands in, 57
 - commands for, **243**, 470, **473**
 - double-column, 243
 - forcing typesetting of, 84
 - lists of, *see also under* lists, 470
 - adding a line to, 470
 - fragile commands in, 57
 - numbering of, 242, 243
 - old-style, 46
 - placement of, **244**, 245, 478, 480
- file formats, PDF, for graphics, **243**
- file transfer protocol, *see* FTP
- file transferring
 - Dropbox, 531, 534, 538, 540
 - iTunes for iPad, 534
 - the Cloud, 538
- FileApp
 - \LaTeX app for iPad, 531
- `fileerr` (pack.), 295
- files
 - `MakeIndex` log, *see* `ilg`
 - auxiliary, *see* `aux`
 - \BibTeX log, *see* `blg`
 - \BibTeX style, *see* `bst`
 - class (`cls`), *see under* document classes
 - command, *see* command files
 - converting from articles to presentations, 308
 - documents composed of multiple, 471–473
 - DVI, *see* DVI files
 - font definition, *see* `fd`
 - font metric, *see also* `tfm`, *see under* font metrics
 - glossary, *see* `glo`
 - `hyperref` bookmarks, *see* `out`
 - including in other files, 385, **472**
 - index entry, *see* `idx`
 - list
 - of figures, *see* `lof`
 - of tables, *see* `lot`
 - listing those used by a document, 386
 - log, *see* log files
 - naming of
 - with `\graphicspath` command, 473
 - organization of, 471–473
 - package source, *see under* packages
 - Portable Document Format, *see* PDF
 - PostScript (PS), *see under* PostScript
 - processed index, *see* `ind`
 - sample, *see* sample files
 - source, *see* source files
 - start on new page with `\include` command, 472
 - style, *see* `sty`
 - tables of contents, *see* `toc`
 - terminating, 394, **472**
- `fill` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 346
- filling horizontal space, **88**, 95, 106, 165, 216, 218, 416
- `final` (doc. class opt.), 281, 289
- final preparation, of books, 476–480
- fine tuning
 - of mathematical formulas, 170–172
 - placement of root with `\sqrt`, 142
 - placement of text boxes, 96
- `\Finv` (\nexists math sym.), 488
- `firstarticle.tex` (sample file), 256, 308, 310, **23–310**
- `firstarticle.tex` (sample file), 24, 35, 36
- `firstarticlei.idx` (index entry file), 457, 456–458
- `firstarticlei.ilg` (index log file), 458
- `firstarticlei.ind` (index proc. file), 457–458
- `firstarticlei.tex` (sample file), 450, 457, 459
- `firstarticlei1l.tex` (sample file), 26
- `firstpresentation.tex` (sample file), 26
- fixed-size math delimiters, 147
- `fixltx2e.dtx`, 293
- `fixltx2e.ins`, 293
- `fixltx2e.sty`, 293, 294
- `flalign` (math align. env.), 192, 194, **205**, 213

- `\flat` (\flat math sym.), 488
 - `fleqn` (doc. class opt.), 133, **279**, 290
 - floats, 242–245
 - commands, 26, 242, 245
 - controls, 114, **244–245**
 - environments, 113, **242–244**
 - `figure`, **243–244**, 244, 309, **343**
 - `figure*`, 243
 - locating, 478, 480
 - `table`, 114, **242**, 244
 - `table*`, 243
 - forcing typesetting of, 84
 - specifying placement of, **244**, 245, 478
 - floor math delimiters, 145, 489
 - flush left
 - alignment of formulas, 191, 194, 196, 198, 205, 290
 - column alignment, 214–215, 219
 - columns in `tabular` environments, 115
 - setting equations, 279, 289
 - flush right
 - alignment of formulas, 191, 194, 196, 198, 205
 - alignment of text, 88
 - column alignment, 214–215, 219
 - columns in `tabular` environments, 115
 - setting equations, 279, 289
 - `flushleft` (text align. env.), **104**, 408
 - breaking lines in, 104
 - `flushright` (text align. env.), 51, **104**, 408
 - breaking lines in, 104
 - `\fnsymbol` (footnote counter style com.), 70
 - folders
 - structure of, 471–473
 - font command declarations, *see also* font commands, 73
 - for shape
 - `\em`, 73, 74, 75, 103, 496
 - `\itshape`, 73, **74**, 74, 75, 77, 103, 414, 496
 - `\normalfont`, **73**, 73, 103, 143, 496, 523
 - `\rmfamily`, 73, 103, 496
 - `\scshape`, 73, **74**, 103, 496
 - `\sffamily`, 73, 77, 103, 496
 - `\slshape`, 73, **74**, 75, 77, 78, 103, 496
 - `\ttfamily`, 73, 103, 122, 496
 - `\upshape`, 73, **74**, 103, 382, 414, 496
 - for weight
 - `\bfseries`, **55**, 56, 57, 73, **76**, 77, 78, 103, 496
 - `\mdseries`, 73, **76**, 496
 - font commands, *see also* font command declarations
 - and italic correction, 73, 75
 - and *MakeIndex*, 73
 - for selecting fonts using family names, 522
 - for series
 - `\textmd`, 73, **76**, 496
 - for shape
 - `\emph`, 10, 51, 73, **74**, 319, 496
 - `\textit`, 73, **74**, 319, 496
 - `\textnormal`, **73**, 73, 143, 496
 - `\textrm`, 73, 283, 496
 - `\textsc`, 73, **74**, 496
 - `\textsf`, 73, 496
 - `\textsl`, 73, **74**, 496
 - `\texttt`, 10, 60, 73, 496
 - `\textup`, 73, **74**, 496
 - `\upn`, 136
 - for size
 - `\footnotesize`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\Huge`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\huge`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\LARGE`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\Large`, **76**, 76, 77, 497
 - `\large`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\larger`, **77**
 - `\normalsize`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\scriptsize`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\SMALL`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\Small`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\small`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\Tiny`, **76**, 76, 497
 - `\tiny`, **76**, 76, 497
 - for weight
 - `\textbf`, 10, 57, 73, **76**, 143, 283, 319, 496
 - low-level, 78
 - math, *see* math font commands
 - obsolete, **77**
 - orthogonality of, **77**
 - two-letter (obs. \LaTeX 2.09), and italic correction, **77**
 - using in math environments, 143
- font encodings, **61**, 61
 - koi8-u, 526
 - LY1, 523, 524
 - OT1, 522
 - T1, 65, 499, 525
- font environments
 - for series
 - `bfseries`, 103
 - for shape
 - `em`, 103
 - `itshape`, 103
 - `rmfamily`, 103
 - `scshape`, 103
 - `sffamily`, 103
 - `slshape`, 103

- `ttfamily`, 103
 - `upshape`, 103
 - for weight
 - `bfseries`, 103
- font families, document, *see* document font families
- font metrics files, 300, **506**, 522, 523
- font series, 72, **76**
 - command declarations for, *see* command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
- font shapes
 - command declarations for, *see under* font command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
 - sans serif, 72
 - serif, 72
- font substitution, 77, 300, 477
 - warning messages, 77
- font weight, 72
 - command declarations for, *see under* font command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
- font width, 72
- `fontenc` (pack.), **523**, 525, 526
- `\fontfamily` (font selection com.), 522
- fonts
 - AMSFonTS, 281, **283**
 - document class options for, 281–282
 - obtaining, 518
 - PostScript versions of, 281, 283, 504, 510
 - technical support for, 519
 - updates to, 510
 - bitmap, 521
 - blackboard bold, 161, **180**, 390
 - bold math, 164, **179**, 179, **181**, 492
 - calligraphic, 165, **180**, 283, 390, 492
 - commands, *see under* font commands *and* font command declarations
 - Computer Modern, *see* Computer Modern
 - Courier (typewriter shape), 299, 522
 - encodings, *see* font encodings
 - Euler Fraktur, 160, **180**, 283, 390, 492
 - Euler Script, **283**, 284, 390, 492
 - European Modern (EM), *see* European Modern fonts
 - for text in math mode, 143
 - Helvetica, 72, 522
 - including in PDF files, 300
 - including in PostScript files, 299
 - Lucida Bright, 521, 524
 - math, 178–180
 - size of, 182
 - monospaced, 71
 - names of
 - \LaTeX 2.09, 295
 - PSNFSS (Berry scheme), 522
 - PostScript, *see under* PostScript
 - proportional, 71
 - proprietary
 - using in PDF files, 300
 - using in PostScript files, 299
 - samples, 295
 - selecting, 71–78
 - with `\fontfamily` command, 522
 - with `\selectfont` command, 78, 522
 - shapes, *see* font shapes
 - size of, 40, 72, 76, 103, 497, **76–497**
 - document class options for, 279, 288
 - sources for, 524
 - STIX, 173
 - substitution of, 77, 300, 477
 - Times, 72, 522–523
 - typewriter style, 71
 - weight, *see* font weight
 - width, *see* font width
- `fontsmpl` (pack.), 295
- `fonttbl.tex` (sample file), 61, 114
- footers, page, 252–254
- `\footnote`, 70
- `footnote` (counter), 402
- footnotes, 70–71
 - and double-column documents, 295
 - fragile commands in, 57
 - in `minipage` environments, 93
 - indicated by symbols, 70
 - on title pages, 70
 - unmarked, 263
- `\footnotesize`, **76**, 76, 497
- `\forall` (math sym.), 488
- forcing
 - floats to typeset, 84
 - indentation, 82
- formats
 - \LaTeX , 505
 - \TeX
 - creating with `initex`, 505
 - files read by `virtex`, 505
 - Plain \TeX , 505
- formatting of documents, determined by
 - document classes, 45
- `formulanote.tex` (sample file), 12–14, 38–39
- `formulanotebad1.tex` (sample file), 38

- formulas, 6, 13
 - adjusted, 194, **214–224**
 - flush left and right, 198
 - aligning, **20–22**, 191–194, **202–214**, 224, 280, 504
 - multiline, 200–201
 - rules for, 200–201, 203
 - text in, 208–210
 - annotating, 207
 - boxed, *see under* boxes
 - breaking into multiple lines, 21, **200–201**
 - displayed, 41
 - rules for, 201
 - commas in, 135
 - components of, 14–18, 137–142
 - building using, 157–160
 - displayed, *see* displayed math
 - environments, *see* displayed math environments
 - gallery, 160–166
 - grouping, 194, **195–196**
 - inline, *see* inline math environments
 - multiline, **20–22**, 41
 - splitting, 196–198
 - numbering, *see under* equation
 - specifying fonts for, 143
- foundries, type, 522, 524
- `\frac` ($\frac{x}{y}$), 13, 14, 53, **137**, 165, 183
- fractions, 13, 14, 53, **137**, 165
 - continued, 183
 - displayed, **137**, 165
 - generalized, 187–188
 - inline, 137
- fragile commands, 57–58
 - protecting, **57**, 234, 235, 464, 469
- `frame` (beamer env.), 27–29, 309, 310, 325
- `\framebox`, 91
- frames, *see also under* presentations, **309**, 340
 - environments of, 309
 - outline (table of contents), 310
 - titles, 27–29, 309, 340
- `\frametitle` (beamer com.), 27–29, 309, 310, 326
- `\frenchspacing` (spacing com.), 51
- Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), 517, 519
- front matter, 465
 - numbering of chapters in, 465
 - of AMS documents, 268
 - of books, **467–469**
- `\frontmatter` (struct. com.), 465
- `\frown` (\curvearrowright binary rel.), 483
- `ftnright` (pack.), 295
- FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 516
- `\Game` (\oslash math sym.), 488
- `\Gamma` (Γ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\gamma` (γ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `gather` (disp. math env.), 41, 192, 194, **195–196**, 202, 213, 477
 - page breaks in, 224
 - rules for, 195
- `gather*` (disp. math env.), 195
- `gathered` (subsid. math env.), 194, 210–213
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks`
- commands, 225
- `\gcd` (gcd math op.), 150, 490
- `\ge` (\geq binary rel.), 483
- generalized
 - commands, *see* custom commands
 - fractions, 187–188
- `\genfrac` (math com.), **187–188**
- geometry (pack.), 40, 254
- `\geq` (\geq binary rel.), 483
- `\geqq` (\geq binary rel.), 484
- `\geqslant` (\geq binary rel.), 484
- german (opt. of babel pack.), 526
- `german.tex` (sample file), 526
- `\gg` (\gg binary rel.), 483
- `ggamsart.tpl` (template file), 278
- `\ggg` (\ggg binary rel.), 484
- `\gimel` (\gimel Hebrew char.), 144, 481
- `glo` (glossary files), 461, 508
- global commands, *see under* scope
- glossaries, 461
 - as a custom list environment, 415
 - auxiliary file (`glo`), 461, 508
 - defining, 461, 508
- `\glossary` (glossary com.), 461, 508
- `glue`, **377**, 410, **507**, 507
 - horizontal, 507
 - parameters of, 507
 - vertical, *see also under* vertical spacing, 507
- glyphs, *see also* characters
 - measuring, 507
- `\gnapprox` (\gtrapprox neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\gneq` (\gtr neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\gneqq` (\gtr neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\gnsim` (\gtrsim neg. binary rel.), 485
- Google, 461, 516
- Goossens, Michel, xxix, 548, 550
- graphics
 - commands for, **244**, 244, 309, 324, 344–347, 473
 - in presentations, 324
- formats
 - PDF, 243
 - including in documents, 243–244, 343–357
- Inkspace, 26
- scaling, 244

- tikzname (pack.), 344
- TikZ (graphics pack.)
 - tikzpicture (graphics env.), 344
- TikZ (pack.), 26, 243, 344
 - above com., 351
 - align com., 351
 - arc com., 349
 - around com., 352
 - arrow com., 354–356
 - below com., 348, **351**
 - center com., 351
 - circle com., 345–349, 353
 - colors, 354
 - components, 347–350
 - controls com., 350
 - curves, 350
 - dashed com., 353, 354, 356
 - dotted com., 350, 353
 - \draw com., **344–346**
 - ellipse com., 348, 349, 351
 - end angle com., 349
 - every picture com., 347
 - fill com., 346
 - grid com., 344, 346
 - in com., 350, 354
 - labels, 346, 350
 - left com., 351, 356
 - line width com., 345, 347, 353
 - out com., 350, 354
 - path attributes, 353–356
 - radius com., 345
 - rectangle com., 349, 351, 352
 - right com., 351, 356
 - rotate com., 351
 - scale com., 352
 - semithick com., 353
 - shift com., 352
 - start angle com., 349
 - thick com., 351, 353
 - thin com., 353
 - \tikzset com., 347
 - transformations, 351–353
 - ultra thick com., 353
 - ultra thin com., 353
 - very thick com., 350, 353, 354
 - very thin com., 353
 - xscale com., 353
 - yscale com., 353
- graphics (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 293, 517
- graphics (pack.), 294
- \graphicspath (graphics com.), 471
- graphicx (pack.), 25, 173, 232, 243–244, 281, 503
- grave (` grave text accent), 46, 63, 496
- \grave (x math accent), 154, 492
- greater than (>)
 - as binary relation, 483
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- Greek letters, 144, 161, 388–390, 482
- Greenwade, George D., 81
- grid (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 344, 346
- grouping
 - chapters into parts, 464
 - equations, 186–187
 - formulas, 194, **195–196**
- groups
 - of equations, 186–187
 - cross-referencing, 201–202
 - labels for, 187
 - numbering, 201–202
 - of tokens, 506
- \gtrapprox (\gtrapprox binary rel.), 484
- \gtrdot (> binary rel.), 484
- \gtreqless (\gtreqless binary rel.), 484
- \gtreqqlless (\gtreqqlless binary rel.), 484
- \gtrless (\gtrless binary rel.), 484
- \gtrsim (\gtrsim binary rel.), 484
- guillemets, 499
- \guillemotleft (Eur. quot. mark), 499
- \guillemotright (Eur. quot. mark), 499
- \guilsingleft (Eur. quot. mark), 499
- \guilsingright (Eur. quot. mark), 499
- Gurari, Eitan, 548
- \gvertneqq (\gvertneqq neg. binary rel.), 485
- \H double acute text accent (¨), 63, 496
- Hahn, Harley, 545, 549
- handout (beamer doc. class opt.), 341
- \hangafter
 - T_EX command, 375
 - length command, 82
- \hangindent (length com.), **82**
- hanging indentation, **82**, 125
- Hargreaves, Kathryn A., 545, 547
- Harrison, Michael A., 447, 460, 547
- Hart, Horace, 545, 549
- \hat (x math accent), 16, 154, 492
- \hbar (\hbar math sym.), 488
- \hdotsfor (space fill com.), **165**, 216, 218
 - optional argument of, 216
- headers, page, *see* running heads
- headings (page style), 252
- \headtoname (redef. name), 376
- \heartsuit (♥ math sym.), 488
- Hebrew letters, 144, 481
- \height (length com.), **90**, 90, 93
- height, of text boxes, 90, 92, 93, 95, 407, 407
- Helvetica (sans serif font), 72, 522
- \hfill (space fill com.), 88, 106, 111, 416

- `\Hfootnotename` (`hyperref` redef. name), 305
- `\hfuzz` (`\hbox` warning adjustment), 79
- `hhline` (pack.), 120, 295
- hierarchy of structural commands, 234, 235, 464
- history of $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$, $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - $\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$, and $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$, 501–505
- `\hline` (table com.), 115, 117
- Høgholm, Morten, 189
- `\hom` (hom math op.), 149, 490
- `\hookleftarrow` (\hookleftarrow math arrow), 487
- `\hookrightarrow` (\hookrightarrow math arrow), 487
- horizontal lines (rules), in tabular environments, 115, 117
- horizontal spacing, 296
 - commands
 - `_` (interword space), 9, **49**, 54, 84, 170, 500
 - `\!` (`negthinspace`), 162, **170**, 170, 493, 500
 - `\,` (`thinspace`), 16, 51, 58, 170, 170, 493, 500
 - `\:` (`medspace`), 170, 493, 500
 - `\;` (`thickspace`), 170, 493, 500
 - `\@` (`intersentence space`), 500
 - `\dotfill` (fill com.), 88
 - `\frenchspacing`, 51
 - `\hdotsfor` (fill com.), **165**, 216, 218
 - `\hfill` (fill com.), 88, 106, 111, 416
 - `\hrulefill` (fill com.), 88, 95
 - `\hspace`, **84**, 122
 - `\hspace*`, 40, 52, 85–86
 - `\medspace`, 170, 493, 500
 - `\mspace`, **170**, 170, 493
 - `\negmedspace`, 170, 493, 500
 - `\negthickspace`, 170, 493, 500
 - `\negthinspace`, 162, **170**, 170, 493, 500
 - `\nobreakspace`, 59
 - `\nonfrenchspacing`, 51
 - `\phantom`, **84–85**, 169, **171–172**, 206, 407
 - `\qqquad`, 84, 87, 170, 170, 207, 493, 500
 - `\quad`, 18, 84, 87, 134, 170, 170, 207, 493, 500
 - `\thickspace`, 170, 493, 500
 - `\thinspace`, 16, 51, 58, 170, 170, 493, 500
 - to avoid using, 475
 - `\xspace`, 366–367
 - in math, **13**, **134–135**, **168–172**, 216, 219
 - in text, 9, 40, **48–51**, **84–86**, 95, 106, 416, 493, 500
 - intersentence, 9, 48–51
 - interword space (`_`), 9, 48–51, 54, 59, 84, 382, 427
 - preventing removal of, 85
 - `howpublished` ($\mathcal{B}\mathcal{I}\mathcal{B}\mathcal{T}\mathcal{E}\mathcal{X}$ database field), 425
 - `\href` (`hyperref` com.), 304
 - `\hrulefill` (space fill com.), 88, 95
 - `\hslash` (\hbar math sym.), 488
 - `\hspace` (spacing com.), **84**, 122
 - `\hspace*` (spacing com.), 40, 52, 85–86
 - HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol), 516
 - `\Huge` (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
 - `\huge` (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
 - `\hyperlink` (`beamer` com.), 325
 - hyperlinks, 301
 - in PDF files, **301–305**
 - increasing size of, 304
 - suppressing, 304
 - to bibliographic citations, 302
 - to Web sites, 304–305
 - in presentations, 325–329, 340, 341
 - putting bookmarks in documents, 303
 - to bibliographic citations, 303, 303
 - with `hyperref` pack., 302, 303, 301–303
 - `hyperref` (pack.), 301–305
 - bookmarks file (out), 303
 - commands
 - `\autoref`, 302, 302, 304, 305
 - `\pageref`, 304
 - `\ref`, 304
 - `\urladdr`, 304
 - `\WriteBookmarks`, 303
 - documentation for, 302
 - options, **302**
 - `bookmarks=true`, 302
 - `colorlinks`, **302**, 302, 303
 - `dvipdf`, 301
 - `dvipdfm`, 301
 - `dvipdfmx`, 301
 - `dvips`, 301
 - `dvipsone`, 301
 - `dviwindo`, 301
 - `hypertex`, 301
 - `pagebackref`, 302, 303, 303
 - `pdftex`, 301
 - `ps2pdf`, 301
 - `tex4ht`, 301
 - `textures`, 301
 - `vtex`, 301
 - `hypertex` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 301
 - Hypertext Transfer Protocol, *see* HTTP
 - `hyphen.tex`, 65
 - hyphenation, **65–67**, 507
 - determined by optional `hyphen`, 12, 65
 - displaying, 66

- LaTeX's algorithm, 62, 65
 - of German text, 526
 - of hyphenated words, 11
 - of words with accents, 65
 - preventing, 65–66, 89
 - rules for English, 67
 - specifying, 65
 - tables, 505
- `\hyphenation`, 65
- hyphens, **11**, 46, **58**
 - key, 7, 47
 - optional, 12, **65**, 65, 79
 - unbreakable, 66
- `\i` (i dotless i), **62**, 63, 496
- `\idotsint` ($\int \cdots \int$ large math op.), **141**, 152, 491
- `idx` (index aux. file), 456, 457, 458, 461
- `\iff` (\iff math arrow), 363, 487
- `\ignorespacesafterend` (spacing com.), 382
- `\iiiint` (\iiint large math op.), **141**, 152, 491
- `\iiint` (\iiint large math op.), **141**, 152, 491
- `\iint` (\iint large math op.), **141**, 152, 491
- `ilg` (*MakeIndex* log files), 458
- illustrations, 242, **243–244**, **343**
 - commands for, 473
 - double-column, 243
 - Encapsulated PostScript (EPS), 471
 - `graphicx` (pack.), 232, 243
 - placement of, 84, 245
 - Portable Document Format (PDF), 243, 471
 - preparation of, 477
 - sample files, 309
 - scaling, 244
 - with `graphicx` (pack.), 25
 - with the `picture` environment, 243
- Illustrator, Adobe, *see under* Adobe Illustrator
- `\Im` (\Im math sym.), 488
- `\imath` (\imath math sym.), 488
- iMazing
 - LaTeX app for iPad, 531
- `\in` (\in binary rel.), 483
- `in` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 350, 354
- `in` (inch abs. unit), 11, 79, 87, 89, 92, 405
- `inbibl.tpl` (sample file), 247
- INBOOK (bibl. entry type), 424, **435**
- inch (`in` abs. unit), 11, 79, 87, 89, 92, 405
- `\include` (inclusion com.), 394, 471, **472**
 - and auxiliary files, 508
 - and counters, 402
 - errors with, 472
 - files start on new pages, 472
- `\includegraphics` (graphics com.), **244**, 309, 473
 - file extensions in, 244
 - in presentations, 324
- `\includeonly` (preamble inclusion com.), 402, 471, **472**
- including
 - files in other files, 385, 394
 - fonts
 - in PDF files, 300
 - in PostScript files, 299
 - graphics in documents, 243–244, 343–357
- INCOLLECTION (bibl. entry type), 424, **431**
- incrementing counters, 401
- `ind` (proc. index files), **457**, 457, 458, 480
- `\indent` (indentation com.), 82
- indentation
 - hanging, **82**, 125
 - in `multiline` and `multline*` environments, 197
 - in source files, 159
 - of environment bodies, 135
 - of first lines of paragraphs, 82, 295, **405**
 - of subformulas, 201
 - of text, 82
 - customizing, 86
 - forcing, 82
 - preventing, 82
- `indentfirst` (pack.), 295
- `\index` (indexing com.), 369, **448**, 448, **451–456**
 - at signs (`@`) in, 453, 454
 - defining cross-references in indexes with, 455
 - double quote (`"`) in, 454
 - encapsulators, 452
 - exclamation marks (`!`) in, 451, 452, 454
 - modifiers, 452
 - page ranges in, 452
 - placement of commands, **455–456**, 479
 - spaces in argument of, 459
 - syntax of, 456
 - vertical line (`|`) in, 452, 454
- indexes, 293, 450, **447–461**
 - appear in back matter, 448
 - auxiliary files (`idx`), 456, **458**
 - cross-references in, 455
 - defining, *see* indexing
 - entries
 - sorting, 453–454
 - stored in `idx` files, 456, **458**
 - log files (`ilg`), 458
 - main entries, 251, 447, **451**
 - multiple, 460–461
 - placement of, **448**, 458
 - processed files (`ind`), **457–459**, 480
 - processing, 456–459
 - sample, 450, 448–450

- indexes (*cont.*)
 - simple, 251
 - special characters in, 454
 - subentries, 251, 447, **451**
 - subsubentries, 251, 447, **452**
 - syntax of, 456
 - typesetting, 456–459
 - using `showidx`, 451
 - vertical space in, 251, 447
- indexing, *see also MakeIndex*, 447–461
 - commands for, 251, 369, **447–456**, 458
 - CTAN systems for, 517
 - entries
 - main, 251, 447, **451**
 - subentries, 251, 447, **451**
 - subsubentries, 251, 447, **452**
 - environment for, 251, 408, 447, 457
 - page ranges, 452
 - placement of commands for, 455–456
 - processed files (`ind`), 480
 - processed index files (`ind`), **457–459**
 - rules for, 459–460
 - typesetting entries in margins, 293
 - with AMS document classes, 448
 - with custom commands, 369–370
- `\indexname` (redef. name), 376
- `\indexspace` (indexing com.), 447
- `\inf` (inf math op.), 150, 281, 490
- information, top matter
 - AMS specific, 263–264
 - AMS subject classifications, 263
 - keywords, 264, 278
 - author, 259–263, 286
 - addresses, 260, 277
 - current addresses, 261, 265
 - e-mail addresses, 261, 264, 277
 - Internet addresses, 262, 264, 277
 - research support, 262, 264, 277, 286
 - for articles, 257–268
 - author names, 259, 277, 286
 - dedications, 259
 - title, 257, 278, 286
 - translator, 258
- `\infty` (∞ math sym.), 38, 488
- `initex` (T_EX program), 505
- initials
 - periods in, 50–51
 - typographical rules for, 50
- `\injl` (inj lim math op.), 150
- Inkspac graphics, 26
- inline
 - fractions, 137
 - math formulas, *see* inline math environments
 - tables, 113
- inline math environments, 12, 41, **132**
 - `\(` (start math mode), 13, 57, 132
 - `\)` (end math mode), 13, 57, 132
 - act as special braces, 132, 133
 - and $\$, 12, 13, 41, 57, \mathbf{132}, 132$
 - display-style binomials in, 137
 - font size of, 182
 - math, 132
 - matrices in, 218
 - size of delimiters in, 148
- INPROCEEDINGS (bibl. entry type), 424, 430–431
- `\input` (inclusion com.), 505
- `inputenc` (pack.), 525
- `\institute` (beamer com.), 308
- institution (BIBT_EX database field), 425
- instructions to L^AT_EX, 6, 8, 24, 35, 47, 51, 230, 234, 511
- `\int` (\int large math op.), **16**, 152, 491
- integrals, 16, 141, 280
- integration of fonts into L^AT_EX, 503, 521
- interactive mode, 94, 375–377, **511**
- `\intercal` (\intercal math op.), 486
- intercolumn spacing, 191, 193, 203, 204
 - in aligned math environments, 207, 211
 - in tabular environments, 115
- interline spacing, 41, 148, 225
 - adjusting, **78**, 80–82, 86
- international T_EX users groups, 515
- Internet, 262, 304, 417, 516
 - addresses, 262, 305
 - in top matter (`\urladdr` com.), 262, 277, 304
 - and L^AT_EX, 515
 - browsers, **516**, 518
 - FTP transfers, 516
 - viewing PDF files in, 300
 - documents in PostScript format, 299
 - finding L^AT_EX and T_EX related material on, 515
 - finding L^AT_EX- and T_EX-related material on, 516
 - hyperlinks in PDF documents, 301, 304
 - L^AT_EX and T_EX resources on, 516, 519
 - putting L^AT_EX documents on, 299–305
 - types of sites for downloading files, 516
- intersentence spaces (`\@.`), 9, 48–51, 500
 - and `\frenchspacing`, 51
 - and `\nonfrenchspacing`, 51
- `\intertext` (text in math com.), 208–210
- interword space, 9, 48–51, 59, 382, 427
 - and `\frenchspacing`, 51
 - and `\nonfrenchspacing`, 51
 - command (`_`), 9, **49**, 54, 84, 170, 500
- `intlimits` (opt. of amsmath pack.), 280

- invalid characters, 7, 47
- invisible boxes, *see* struts
- invoking
 - custom commands, 364
 - delimited commands, 378
 - proclamations, 35, **105**, 108, 324, 383
- `\iota` (ι Greek char.), 144, 482
- iPad
 - the Cloud, 529
 - iTunes file transferring, 534
 - keyboards, 537, 539, 541
 - \LaTeX apps, 530, **531**, 530–531, 541
 - TeX Writer, 530, 540–541
 - Texpad, 540
 - Latex apps \LaTeX apps
 - Texpad, 530, 534
 - printers, 533
 - printing apps, 533
 - printing \LaTeX files, 533
 - the Cloud, 538
 - typesetting source files, 538, 541
- ISBN (bibl. com.), 425
- `\it` (obs. \LaTeX 2.09 font com.), 77
- italic correction, **74–75**, 500
 - and commas, 75
 - and `\em`, 75
 - and font commands, 73, 75
 - and `\itshape`, 74, 75
 - and periods, 75
 - and `\slshape`, 75
 - suppressing, 75
 - with two-letter font commands, 77
- italics
 - bold math, 180
 - font shape, 10, 19, 51, 71, 73, **74**, 77, **103**, 414, 496
 - in math mode, **179**, 179, 492
 - math font, 179
- `\item` (list item com.), 98, 40–103, 240
 - and square brackets, 102
 - in simple indexes, 251, 447
 - optional arguments of, 100, **102**, 410, 411
- `\itemindent` (length com.), 409, 410
- `itemize` (text list env.), 40, 98, **99**, 240
- `\Itemname` (hyperref redef. name), 305
- `\itemsep` (length com.), **410**, 414
- `\itshape` (font shape com. dec.), 73, **74**, 77, 103, 414, 496
 - and italic correction, 74, 75
- `itshape` (font shape env.), 103
- iTunes file transferring
 - iPad, 534
- `\j` (\j dotless j), **62**, 63, 496
- Jackowski, Bogusław, 504
- Java, with \BibTeX , 445
- JavaScript, 300
- JBibtexManager bibl. manager, 445
- Jeffrey, Alan, 503
- Jensen, Frank, 404
- `\jmath` (\j math sym.), 488
- `\Join` (\bowtie binary rel.), 483
- Jones, David M., 446, 504
- journal (\BibTeX database field), 425
- Jr., in bibliographic entries, 426
- justification of text
 - right, 10, 51
- `\k` (ogonek Eur. accent), 499
- `\kappa` (κ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\ker` (ker math op.), 149, 490
- Kern, Uwe, 307, 330, 331, 549
- kerning, 506, 507
- key (\BibTeX database field), 425
- keyboard, **46**, 7–48, 525
- keyboards for iPad, 537, 539, 541
- keys, 12
 - alphanumeric, 7
 - Enter, *see* Return key
 - Esc (escape), 47, 363
 - letter, **46**, 7–46
 - math symbol, 46
 - math typing, 12
 - modifier, 46, 47
 - number, 46
 - prohibited, 7, 47
 - Return, 7, 9, 47
 - space bar, 7, 9, 47, 307, 315
 - special, 7, 12, **47**, 60
 - Tab, 7, 9, 47
- keys, sorting (in `\index` commands), 453–454
 - case sensitivity of, 459
- `\keywords` (top matter com.), 278
 - rules for using, 264
- keywords (bibl. com.), 425
- `\keywordsname` (redef. name), 376
- `\kill` (tabbing com.), 121, 122
- Knuth, Donald E., xxv, 31, 501–503, 505, 545, 549
- koi8-u (font encoding), 526
- L, slashed (\mathbb{L} , \mathbb{l}), 63, 495
- `\label` (cross-ref. com.), **19**, 22, 37, 69, 136, 199, 213, 234, **237**, 241, 310
 - and simple indexes, 251
 - arguments of, 239
 - assigning counters to, 403
 - in table environments, 26, 242
 - placement of commands, 479
 - rules for, 239

- `\label` (cross-ref. com.) (*cont.*)
 - showing in margin, 240, 295
 - with `\`, 199
- labels
 - for `\bibitem` commands, 247
 - for bibliographic items, 101
 - for equations, 19, 237
 - for groups of equations, 187
 - in list environments, **101**, 101
 - of items in a `list` environment, 409, **410**, 411
 - setting with `\label`, 19, 237
 - `TikZ` (graphics pack.), 346
 - `TikZ` graphics, 350
- `\labelsep` (length com.), 409, 410
- `\labelwidth` (length com.), 409, 410
- `\Lambda` (Λ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\lambda` (λ Greek char.), 144, 482
- Lamport, Leslie, xxv, 405, 502, 503, 505, 544, 550
- `\land` (\wedge math op.), 486
- `landscape` (doc. class opt.), 289
- `\langle` (\langle math delimiter), 145, **146**, 489
- `language` (BIB_{TEX} database field), 425
- `\LARGE` (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- `\Large` (font size com.), **76**, 76, 77, 497
- large
 - math delimiters
 - in `array` subsidiary math environment, 295
 - operators, 16, **17**, 141, 152, **151–153**, 491
 - limits of, **151**, 280
 - sizing of math delimiters with, 148
 - symbols, 97, 210–212
- `\large` (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- `\larger` (font size com.), **77**
- L_AT_EX, 31, **501**
 - and the Internet, 515
 - apps for iPad, 530
 - counters, 402
 - customizing, 361–418
 - distribution, 61, 68, 293, **292–296**, **505**, 505, 509, 510, 517
 - components of, 285–290
 - directories, 240, **292–293**, 294, 518, 525
 - on CTAN, 518
 - document classes, *see under* document classes
 - document structure, 229–254, 465
 - documentation for, 293
 - packages, 294
 - documents, 229–254
 - printing and viewing, 507
 - putting on the Internet, 299–305
 - files created by, 508–510
 - font substitution, 77, 300, 477
 - formats, 505
 - history of, 501–505
 - implementations, 6, 32, 173, 293, 300, 515
 - technical support for, 518
 - UNIX, 458
 - inner workings of, 505–510
 - iPad apps, **531**, 530–531
 - layers of, 505–506
 - localization of, 62, 525–526
 - numbers stored by, 62–64
 - overview of, 501–513
 - printing files from iPad, 533
 - release dates of, 68, 233, 509
 - resources on the Internet, 519
 - source files, *see under* source files
 - spacing in text, 9
 - structure of, 31–32
 - updates to, 174, 509
 - using, **32**, 33
 - versions of, 509–510
 - specifying, in documents, 68, 232, 385, 509
 - writing books with, 463–480
- L_AT_EX apps
 - for iPad, 541
- `\LaTeX` (L_AT_EX logo com.), 6, 62
- L_AT_EX 2.09, 385, 502–504
 - font names, 295
 - two-letter font commands, **77**, 77
- L_AT_EX 2_ε, *see* L_AT_EX
- `latex.ltx`, **293**
- L_AT_EX 3, **503**, 504, 518
- `\LaTeXe` (L_AT_EX 2_ε logo com.), 62
- `\LaTeXe` (L_AT_EXe logo com.), 504
- `latexsym` (pack.), 160, 231, 276, 282, 293
- layers, of L_AT_EX and T_EX, 505–506
- layout
 - of a list, 409
 - of Computer Modern typewriter font, 61, 61
 - of pages, 32, **252–254**, 295
- `\layout` (page-layout diagram com.), 252
- `layout` (pack.), 252, 295
- `\lbrace` ($\{$ math delimiter), 41, 145, 489
- `\lbrack` ($[$ math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\lceil` (\lceil math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\ldots` (\dots)
 - in math, 41, 140, 166
 - in text, **15**
- `\le` (\leq binary rel.), 483
- `\leadsto` (\rightsquigarrow math arrow), 487
- `\left` (math delim.), 41, **146**, 148, 164, 218
 - blank, 146, 162
 - must be balanced, 146, 200

- `left` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351, 356
- left double quote (“)
 - text symbol, 58, 64, 498
 - typing, 9
- left single quote (‘)
 - key, 7, 9, 46, **58**
 - text symbol, **58**, 499
- `\left` ((math delimiter), 15, 17, 41, 145, 146, 164, 200, 217
- `\left.` (blank math delim.), 146, 162
- `\left<` ((math delimiter), **146**
- `\left[` ([math delimiter), 15, 145, 161
- `\Leftarrow` (\Leftarrow math arrow), 487
- `\leftarrow` (\leftarrow math arrow), 362, 373, 487
- `\leftarrowtail` (\leftarrowtail math arrow), 487
- `\leftharpoondown` (\leftharpoondown math arrow), 487
- `\leftharpoonup` (\leftharpoonup math arrow), 487
- `\leftleftarrows` (\leftleftarrows math arrow), 487
- `\leftmargin` (length com.), 409, **410**, 413
- `\Leftrightarrow` (\Leftrightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\leftrightarrow` (\leftrightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\leftrightharpoons` (\leftrightharpoons math arrow), 487
- `\leftrightsquigarrow` (\leftrightsquigarrow math arrow), 487
- `\leftroot` (root-adjustment com.), 142
- `\leftthreetimes` (\leftthreetimes math op.), 486
- `\left|` (| math delimiter), 17, 146, 160, 169, 171
- legacy
 - document classes, 98, 231, 236, 247, 256, 284, 287, **285–296**, 506
 - documents, 301
 - environments, 103, 123–125, 408
 - quotation, 124
 - quote, 123
 - verse, 124
- `legacy-article.tex` (sample file), 286, 287
- `legalpaper` (doc. class opt.), 68, 279, 288
- Lehman, Philipp, 446
- length commands, 90, 254, 400, **405–408**
 - and boxes, 407
 - arithmetic with, 295, 406
 - `\baselineskip`, 78, 83
 - `\baselinestretch`, 81
 - defining new, 405
 - `\depth`, **90**, 90, 93
 - `\fboxrule`, 92
 - `\fboxsep`, 92
 - `\hangafter`, 82
 - `\hangindent`, **82**
 - `\height`, **90**, 90, 93
 - in list environments, 408–410
 - `\itemindent`, 409, 410
 - `\itemsep`, 410, 414
 - `\labelsep`, 409, 410
 - `\labelwidth`, 409, 410
 - `\leftmargin`, 409, **410**, 413
 - `\listparindent`, 409, 410, **416**
 - `\marginparpush`, 405
 - `\marginparwidth`, 94
 - `\medskipamount`, 377, **408**
 - `\multlinegap`, 197
 - `\oddsidemargin`, 254
 - `\overfullrule`, 79
 - `\parindent`, **405**, 416
 - `\parsep`, 409, **410**, 414, 416
 - `\parskip`, **405**, 409, 410, 416, 475
 - `\partopsep`, 410
 - `\rightmargin`, 409, **410**, 413
 - setting, 82, 94, **406–407**
 - `\textwidth`, 254, 400, **405**
 - `\topsep`, 409, **410**
 - `\totalheight`, **90**, 90, 92, 93
 - `\width`, **90**, 90, 93
- lengths, rubber, *see* rubber lengths
- `\leq` (\leq binary rel.), 483
- `leqno` (doc. class opt.), **279**, 289
- `\leqq` (\leqq binary rel.), 484
- `\leqslant` (\leqslant binary rel.), 484
- less than (<)
 - as binary relation, 483
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- `\lessapprox` (\lessapprox binary rel.), 484
- `\lessdot` (\lessdot binary rel.), 484
- `\lesseqgtr` (\lesseqgtr binary rel.), 484
- `\lesseqqgtr` (\lesseqqgtr binary rel.), 484
- `\lessgtr` (\lessgtr binary rel.), 484
- `\lesssim` (\lesssim binary rel.), 484
- `letter` (doc. class), 290–292, 506
- `letter` (letter env.), 290–292
 - argument of, 291
 - breaking lines in, 291
 - errors with, 291
- letter keys, **46**, 7–46
- `letter.tex` (sample file), 290–292
- `letterpaper` (doc. class opt.), 279, 288
- letters
 - counter style, 402
 - Greek, 144, 161, 388–390, 482
 - Hebrew, 144, 481
- Levy, Silvio, 545, 550
- `\lfloor` (\lfloor math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\lg` (lg math op.), 149, 490
- `\lhd` (\lhd math op.), 486
- ligatures, **62**
 - suppressing, **62**, 161, 363
- `\lim` (lim math op.), 150, 281, 490
- `\liminf` (lim inf math op.), 150, 490

- limits
 - as subscripts, **16**, **141**, 149–151, 161, 162, 280, 374
 - as superscripts, **16**, **141**, 151, 161, 280
 - large operators with, 16, 17, 141, **151**, 151, 152, 280, 491
 - multiline, 153
 - operators with, 149, 150, 281, 490
 - placement of, 281
- `\limits` (limit-control com.), **141**, 151
- `\limsup` (lim sup math op.), 150, 490
- line boxes, *see under* boxes
- line ending characters, 47–49, 52, 67, 84
 - commenting out, 67, 68, 455
 - translation of, 47
- line numbers, in error messages, 133, 134
- line segments, *TikZ* graphics, 347
- `line width` (*TikZ* graphics pack. com.), 345, 347, 353
- `\linebreak` (line breaking com.), 478, 479
- `\linebreak` (line-breaking com.), **79**, 80
 - optional arguments of, 81
- lines
 - adding to
 - lists of figures and tables, 470
 - tables of contents, 467–468, 480
 - blank
 - in bibliographies, 303
 - in displayed math environments, 37, 134, 136, 198
 - in inline math environments, 134
 - in text environments, 40, 98, 98
 - in top matter commands, 257
 - in *verbatim* environments, 126
 - terminating paragraphs with, 9, 40, **48**, 82, 98, 124, 303
 - breaking, **79**
 - preventing, 81
 - with `\`, 16, 20, 21, 23, 80, 104, 115, 121, 122, 125, 153, 195, 196, 198, 200, 210, 213, 225, 257–261, 278, 286, 291, 340
 - distance between, 86
 - adjusting, 95
 - filling with space or dots, **88**, 95, 106, 165, 216, 218, 416
 - separating
 - with `\`, 16, 20, 21, 23, 80, 104, 115, 121, 122, 125, 153, 195, 196, 198, 200, 210, 213, 225, 257–261, 278, 286, 291, 340
 - with `\linebreak`, **79**, 80, 478, 479
 - stretchable, 156
 - terminating in *TikZ*, 345
 - too wide warnings, 11
 - wrapping, 67
- lines (rules)
 - horizontal
 - filling lines with, 88, 95
 - in tabular environments, 115, 117
 - intersecting in tables, 120, **295**
 - vertical
 - in CD environments, 223
 - in tabular environments, 115
- links, hyper, *see* hyperlinks
- `list` (list text env.), 40, 98, 408, 409, **410–416**
 - arguments of, 411
 - length commands in, 408–410
 - using counters with, 412
- list text environments, 40, **98–103**
 - description, **100**
 - `enumerate`, **98**, 103
 - in proclamations, 106
 - `itemize`, 40, **99**
 - `list`, 40, 98
 - mixing, 102
 - nesting, 101
 - rules for, 100
 - `trivlist`, 416
- `\listfigurename` (redef. name), 375, 376
- `\listfiles` (file list com.), 386, 509, **510**
- listing files used by a document, 386, 510
- `listings` (pack.), 123
- `\listoffigures` (front matter com.), **470**, 509
- `\listoftables` (front matter com.), **470**, 509
- `\listparindent` (length com.), 409, 410, **416**
- lists
 - cross-referencing items in, 99, 103
 - custom
 - and counters, 412
 - defining, 408–416
 - environments for, *see* list text environments, *see* list text environments
 - in presentations, 321–323
 - of figures, 470
 - adding a line to, 470
 - auxiliary file (`lof`), **470**, 480, **509**
 - fragile commands in, 57
 - of tables, 114, **470**
 - adding a line to, 470
 - auxiliary file (`lot`), **470**, 480, **509**
 - fragile commands in, 57
- `\listtablename` (redef. name), 376
- `\ll` (\ll binary rel.), 483
- `\llcorner` (\llcorner math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\Lleftarrow` (\Lleftarrow math arrow), 487
- `\lll` (\lll binary rel.), 484
- `\ln` (ln math op.), 149, 490
- `\lnapprox` (\lnapprox neg. binary rel.), 485

- `\lneq` (\lesssim neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\lneqq` (\lesseqgtr neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\lnot` (\neg math sym.), 488
- `\lnsim` (\lesssim neg. binary rel.), 485
- local commands, *see under* scope
- localization, of \LaTeX , 525–526
- locating errors, 70
- location of \BIBTeX database and style files, 439
- `lof` (list of figures file), **470**, 470, 480, **509**
- `\log` (log math op.), 149, 490
- `log` (\LaTeX log file), 6, 19, **34**, 67, 79, 377, 385, 469, **508**, 510
 - error and warning messages recorded in, 11, 79
- log files
 - for \BIBTeX , *see* `blg`
 - for indexes, *see* `ilg`
 - for \LaTeX , *see* `log`
- log-like functions, *see* operators
- logical
 - design, 35, 229
 - of books, 473–475
 - units, 8, **234**, 23–237, 245, 251, 268, 286, 290–292, 408, 436, 447, 457, **464–465**, 502, 512
 - hierarchy of, 234, 235
 - numbering of, **404**, **464**
 - numbering of proclamations within, 108
- logos, 62–64
- long commands, 57
- `\Longleftarrow` (\Longleftarrow math arrow), 487
- `\longleftarrow` (\longleftarrow math arrow), 487
- `\Longleftrightarrow` (\Longleftrightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\longleftrightharpoonup` (\longleftrightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\longmapsto` (\longmapsto math arrow), 487
- `\Longrightarrow` (\Longrightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\longrightarrow` (\longrightarrow math arrow), 487
- `longtable` (pack.), 295
- `\looparrowleft` (\looparrowleft math arrow), 487
- `\looparrowright` (\looparrowright math arrow), 487
- `\lor` (\vee math op.), 486
- `lot` (list of tables files), **470**, 480, **509**
- `Louisville.tex` (sample file), 26
- low-level font commands, 78
- lowercase counter styles
 - letters (`\alph`), 402
 - roman numerals (`\roman`), 103, 402
- lowline (`_` text symbol), 60, 64, 498
- `\lozenge` (\Diamond math sym.), 488
- `\lrcorner` (\lrcorner math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\Lsh` (\curvearrowright math arrow), 487
- `\ltimes` (\ltimes math op.), 486
- Lucida Bright, 521, 524
- `lucidabr` (pack.), 524
- `lucidabr.dtx` (PSNFSS distr. file), 524
- `lucidabr.fdd` (PSNFSS distr. file), 524
- `lucidabr.ins` (PSNFSS distr. file), 524
- `lucidabr.sty` (PSNFSS distr. file), 524
- `lucidabr.yy` (PSNFSS distr. file), 524
- `\lVert` ($\|$ math delimiter), 146
- `\lvert` ($|$ math delimiter), 146
- `\lvertneqq` (\nlessgtr neg. binary rel.), 485
- `LY1` (pack. opt.), 523, 524
- Mac, *see* Macintosh
- Macintosh, 5, 445, 473, 502, 529
 - FTP clients, 516
- macron (``` text accent), 63, 496
- macros, *see* commands *and* custom commands
- MacTeX (Windows \LaTeX front end), 5
- main entries, in indexes, 251, 447, **448**, **451**, 454, 455
- main matter, 231, **234–245**, 465
- `\mainmatter` (struct. com.), 465
- `\makebox` (box com.), **89**, 89–91, 93, 95
- `makeglos` (pack.), 461
- `\makeglossary` (preamble glossary com.), 461, 508
- `makeidx` (pack.), 293, **448**, 472
- `MakeIndex`, 60, 252, **447–461**, 509
 - and font commands, 73
- `\maketitle` (title-page com.), 230, 231, 466
 - and abstracts, 233, 268, 288
 - and page styles, 254
- MANUAL (bibl. entry type), 424, **435**
- manuals, in \BIBTeX database files, 435
- manuscripts
 - in \BIBTeX database files, 434–435
 - preparing for publication, 463
- `\mapsto` (\mapsto math arrow), 487
- `\mapstochar` (\mapsto math arrow), 487
- marginal comments, **94–95**, 478
 - in double-sided documents, 94
 - in equations, 94
 - in multiline math environments, 94
 - space between, 405
 - width of paragraph box for, 94
- `\marginpar` (marginal comment com.), 94
 - in double-sided documents, 94
- `\marginparpush` (length com.), 405
- `\marginparwidth` (length com.), 94
- margins, 405, 410
 - of nested lists, 410
 - showing symbolic references in, **240**, 295
- `\markboth` (left and right page header com.), **252**
 - arguments of, 254
- `\markleft` (left page header com.), 254, 265
- `\markright` (right page header com.), 252
- master document, 471–473

- MASTERSTHESIS (bibl. entry type), 424, **433**
- math, 6
- accents, **16**, **154–155**, 163, 164, 283, 375, 477
 - alphabets, 160–162, 165, 179, **178–180**, 283, 390, 492
 - arrows, 156, 168, 222, 487
 - as delimiters, 145, 145, **146**
 - stretchable, **157**, 223–224
 - vertical, 223
 - binary operations, *see* binary operations
 - binary relations, *see* binary relations
 - characters, 12, 46
 - environments, 132–134
 - aligned, *see under* aligned, *see under* aligned
 - and `\verb` commands, 128
 - blank lines in, 134, 136
 - displayed, *see* displayed math
 - environments, *see* displayed math environments
 - inline, *see* inline math environments
 - multiline, **198–202**, 315
 - page breaks in, 224
 - spaces in, 133
 - fonts, 178–180
 - blackboard bold, 161, **180**, 390, 492
 - bold, 164, **179**, 179, **181**, 390, 492
 - bold italic, 179
 - calligraphic, 165, **180**, 283, 390, 492
 - Euler Fraktur, 160, **180**, 283, 390, 492
 - Euler Script, **283**, 390, 492, 492
 - italic, **179**, 179, 492
 - roman, **179**, 179, 492
 - sans serif, **179**, 179, 492
 - size of, 182
 - typewriter, **179**, 179, 492
 - mode, *see* math mode
 - multiline, 191–225
 - Visual Guide to*, **191**, 192
 - operators, 14, 15, 17, 39, 137, 149, 150, **149–153**, 370, 486, 490
 - declaring, 39, 374
 - large, 16, **17**, 141, 148, 152, **151–153**, 280, 491
 - with limits, 16, 17, 141, 149, 150, 151, 152, 280, 281, 490, 491
 - subscripts and superscripts, 182
 - symbol alphabets, 180
 - blackboard bold, 180
 - calligraphic, 180
 - Euler Fraktur, 180
 - Greek, 180
 - symbols, *see* math symbols
 - text in, 13, **18**, 65, 81, 89, 134, **142–143**, 160, 179, 208–210, 224, 283
 - specifying fonts for, 143
 - typing, 23, 131–189
 - math (inline math env.), 132
 - math arrows, 156, 168, 222
 - as delimiters, 145, 145, **146**, 489
 - stretchable, **157**, 223–224
 - vertical, 223
 - math commands, 15, 18, 139, 141, 153, 171, 177, 183, 187
 - for alignment of formulas, 198
 - math delimiters, **15**, 17, 145, **145–148**, 160–162, 164, 165, 168, 169, 171, 200, 217, 218, 489
 - and large operators, 148
 - arrows, 145
 - balancing, 146, 162, 200
 - blank, 146, 162
 - fixed-size, 147
 - in inline math environments, 148
 - in `smallmatrix` subsidiary math environments, 218
 - large, in `array` subsidiary math environment, 295
 - left bracket (`[`), 15, 145, 161
 - limitations of stretching, **147**
 - right bracket (`]`), 15, 145, 161
 - specifying size of, **147**, 164
 - stretchable, 41, 146
 - with `matrix` variants, 217–218
 - math font commands, *see also* font command declarations *and* font commands
 - for bold
 - `\boldsymbol`, 164, 180, **181**, 282, 492
 - `\mathbb`, 161, **180**, 492
 - `\mathbf`, 164, **179**, 179, **181**, 492
 - `\pmb`, **181–182**, 282
 - for italics
 - `\mathit`, **179**, 179, 492
 - for series
 - `\mathnormal`, **179**, 179, 492
 - for shape
 - `\mathcal`, 165, **180**, 492
 - `\mathfrak`, 160, **180**, 283, 492
 - `\mathrm`, 179, 492
 - `\mathscr`, **283**, 492, 492
 - `\mathsf`, **179**, 179, 492
 - `\mathtt`, **179**, 179, 492
 - for size
 - `\displaystyle`, **182**, 187
 - `\scriptscriptstyle`, **182**, 187
 - `\scriptstyle`, **182**, 187
 - `\textstyle`, **182**, 187

- for weight
 - `\boldsymbol`, 164, 180, **181**, 282, 492
 - `\mathbf`, 164, **179**, 179, **181**, 492
 - `\pmb`, **181–182**, 282
- math mode, 6, **46**, 59, 127, 134, 142, 149, 182, 367, 373, 374, 394
- math symbols, 13, 38, 46, 111, 154, 162, 223, 231, 276, 293, 481, 143–493
 - alphabets, **180**
 - and delimiters, 15, 145, 146
 - bold, **181–182**, 282, 295
 - building new, 162, **174–178**, 370
 - classification of, **168–169**, 178
 - declaring types of, 178
 - end of proof, 95, 373
 - in text, 363
 - large, 210, 211
 - negated, 177–178
 - shorthand commands for, 362
 - side-setting, 177–178
 - sizes of, 182
 - spacing of, 168–172
 - stacking, 41, 176, 174–177
 - STIX, **173**, 167–174
 - stretchable, 155–157
 - suppressing, 111, 112
- math units, *see* `\mu`
- `\mathbb` (\mathbb{X}), 161, **180**, 492
- `\mathbf` (math font weight com.), 164, **179**, 179, **181**, 492
- `\mathbin` (binary-op. com.), 178
- `\mathcal` (\mathcal{X}), 165, **180**, 492
 - and Euler Script, 283
- Mathematical Reviews*, 139
- `\mathfrak` (\mathfrak{X}), 160, **180**, 283, 492
- `\mathit` (math font shape com.), **179**, 179, 492
- `\mathnormal` (math font shape com.), **179**, 179, 492
- `\mathrel` (binary-rel. def. com.), 178
- `\mathring` (\mathring{x} math accent), 154, 492
- `\mathrm` (math font shape com.), 179, 492
- `\mathscr` (opt. of euclal pack.), **283**, 385, 391, 492
- `\mathscr` (\mathscr{X} math font shape com.), **283**, 492, 492
- `\mathsf` (math font shape com.), **179**, 179, 492
- `\mathstrut` (spacing com.), 95, 183
- MathTune*, 523
 - installing, 523
- `mathtime` (pack.), 523
- `mathtime.dtx` (PSNFSS distr. file), 523
- `mathtime.ins` (PSNFSS distr. file), 523
- `mathtime.sty` (PSNFSS distr. file), 523
- `mathtools` (pack.), 189
- `\mathtt` (math font shape com.), **179**, 179, 492
- `\mathversion`, 181
- matrices, 16–17, 215–221
 - in inline math environments, 218
- `matrix` (subsid. math env.), 16–17, 192, 194, 214, **215–221**
 - variants, 217–218
- `\max` (max math op.), 150, 281, 490
- `MaxMatrixCols` (counter), 216
- `\mbox` (box com.), 89
- McLean, Ruari, 545, 550
- McPherson, Kent, 252
- `\mdseries` (font weight com. dec.), 73, **76**, 496
- `\measuredangle` (\measuredangle math sym.), 488
- measurements, of text boxes, **407**, 407
 - commands for, 407
- medium (font weight), 72, 73, 76, 496
- `\medskip` (spacing com.), **86**
- `\medskipamount` (length com.), 377, **408**
- `\medspace` (spacing com.), 170, 493, 500
- messages, 6, 35–39, 511
 - Argument of `\xxx` has an extra `}`, 126
 - Bad math environment
 - delimiter, 112, 133, 469
 - `\begin{document}` ended by `\end{xxx}`, 70, 126
 - `\begin{split}` not allowed here, 214
 - `\begin{xxx}` on input line `xx` ended by `\end{yyy}`, 36, 56
 - Can be used only in preamble, 232
 - Command `\xxx` already defined, 365, 375, 380
 - Display math should end with `$$`, 37
 - Double superscript, 138
 - Environment `xxx` undefined, 380
 - error, *see* messages
 - Extra alignment tag has been changed to `\cr`, 219
 - Extra `}`, or forgotten `\xxx`, 206
 - File ‘`xxx`’ not found, 511
 - I was expecting a ‘`,`’ or a ‘`)`’, 444
 - Illegal character in array arg, 219
 - Illegal unit of measure (pt inserted), 96
 - Incomplete `\iffalse`; all text was ignored after line `xx`, 291
 - Invalid use of `\xxx`, 142
 - line numbers in, 133, 134
 - Misplaced `\xxx`, 115, 210
 - Missing `\begin{document}`, 106

- messages (*cont.*)
 - Missing control sequence
 - inserted, 406
 - Missing \$ inserted, 37, 38, 127, 133, 134, 136, 216
 - Missing number, treated
 - as zero, 81, 93
 - Missing } inserted, 38, 206
 - No counter ‘xxx’ defined, 402
 - Paragraph ended before \xxx
- was complete, 36, 96, 105, 220, 372, 378, 460
 - recorded in log file, **34**
 - Runaway argument?, 36, 105, 220, 268, 378, 460
 - Runaway definition?, 37
 - showing paragraph breaks in, 82
 - Something’s wrong-perhaps
- a missing \item, 100, 248
 - \tag not allowed here, 199
 - Text line contains an invalid character, 37, 48
 - Too many }’s, 56, 268
 - Undefined control sequence, 36, 54, 266, 267, 365
 - Underfull \hbox, **80**, 507
 - Use of \xxx doesn’t match its definition, 378
 - \verb command ended by end of line, 128
 - warning, *see* warning messages
 - with BibTeX, 442–445
 - You’re missing a field name, 443
- Metafont, 517
- metrics, font, *see* font metrics
- \mho (\mathcal{O} math sym.), 488
- Microsoft
 - typography web page, 524
 - Windows, 445
- \mid (l binary rel.), 41, 148, 161, 169, 483
- midpoint (\cdot text sym.), 64, 498
- MiKTeX (Windows L^AT_EX front end), 5
- millimeter (mm abs. unit), 405
- \min (min math op.), 150, 281, 490
- minipage (text box env.), 89, 91, 93, 382, 383
 - displaying footnotes in, 93
- minus (–), 7, 14, 47, 59, 137, 168, 171, 172, 179, 200, 201
 - as binary operation, 486
- mirrors, of CTAN, 517
- MISC (bibl. entry type), 424, **435**
- Mittelbach, Frank, xxix, 84, 503, 504, 548, 550
- mixing list text environments, 102
- mm (millimeter abs. unit), 405
- \mod (mod math op.), **151**, 151
- \models (\models binary rel.), 483
- modes
 - interactive, 94, 375–377, **511**
 - quiet, 511
 - typographic
 - math, *see also* inline and displayed
- math environments, 6, **46**, 59, 127, 134, 142, 149, 182, 367, 373, 374, 394
 - text, 6, **46**, 47, 134, 160, 367, 373, 394
- modifier keys, 46, 47
- modifiers, in \index commands, 452
 - combining, 452
- modifying environments, 380–382
- monospaced fonts, 71
- \month (time com.), 63
- month (BibTeX database field), 425, 435
- Moore, Ross, 224, 548
- movable arguments of commands, 57, 469
- \mp (\mp math op.), 486
- mpfootnote (counter), 402
- mrabbrev.bib (BibTeX database file), 436
- mrnumber (bibl. com.), 425
- \mspace (spacing com.), **170**, 170, 493
- mtbold (opt. of mathtime pack.), 523
- mtfonts.fdd (PSNFSS distr. file), 523
- \mu (μ Greek char.), 144, 482
- mu (math unit, rel.), 170, 170, 493
- multicol (pack.), 84, 289, 295
- multicols (disp. text env.), 84, 503
- \multicolumn (table com.), 118, 117–119
- multicolumn text
 - in documents, **84**, 295, 503
 - in tables, 117–119
- multiline
 - boxes, 89
 - formulas, **20–22**, 41, **191–225**
 - Visual Guide to*, **191**, 192
 - aligning, 200–201
 - splitting, 196–198
 - limits, 153
 - math environments, 315
 - adjusting columns in, 191, 193, **214–222**
 - aligning, 191, 194
 - marginal comments in, 94
 - page breaks in, 224–225
 - subscripts and superscripts, 153
 - table entries, 116, 118
 - \multimap (\multimap math arrow), 487
- multipage tables, 295
- multiple
 - arguments
 - in custom commands, 368, 370
 - authors
 - in bibliographies, 426
 - in documents, 264–265, 286
 - bibliographies in a document, 251

- captions, 242
- citations, 250
- documents, cross-referencing among, 296
- files, documents composed of, 471–473
- indexes, 460–461
- spaces, 14, 48, 54
- tables of contents, 468
- multiplication, 14, 137, 140
- `\multline` (disp. math env.), 192, 194, **196–198**
 - indentation of lines in, 197
 - rules for, 196
- `\multline*` (disp. math env.), 197–198
 - indentation of lines in, 197
- `\multlinegap` (length com.), 197
- `myams.tpl`, 275–278
- `myheadings` (page style), 252
- n*-th root, 18, **141**
- `\nabla` (∇ math sym.), 488
- `\namelimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), **281**
- names
 - base (of files), 508
 - for abstracts, 233
 - for proclamations, 105, 108
 - of authors
 - in articles, 259, 277, 286
 - in bibliographies, 426
 - in running heads, 259
 - of commands, 52, 385
 - of counters, 108
 - of files
 - with `\graphicspath` command, 473
 - of fonts
 - \LaTeX 2.09, 295
 - PSNFSS (Berry scheme), 522
 - redefinable, 251, 304, 305, 361, **375**, 526
 - tagging equations with, 20, **185–187**, 195, 196, 199, 201, 212, 213
- `\natural` (\natural math sym.), 488
- `\ncong` (\ncong neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\ne` (\neq neg. binary rel.), 177, 485
- `\nearrow` (\nearrow math arrow), 487
- `\NeedsTeXFormat` (preamble com.), 68, **232**, 385, 509
- `\neg` (\neg math sym.), 488
- negated math symbols, **177–178**, 485
- `\negmedspace` (spacing com.), 170, 493, 500
- `\negthickspace` (spacing com.), 170, 493, 500
- `\negthinspace` (spacing com.), 162, **170**, 170, 493, 500
- `\neq` (\neq neg. binary rel.), 485
- nesting
 - of `comment` environments, 69
 - of list text environments, 101
- New Font Selection Scheme, *see* NFSS and PSNFSS
- `\newcommand` (custom com.), 39, 58, **362–379**
 - defining arguments with, 368
 - name already in use, 375
 - optional arguments, 372
- `\newcommand*` (custom com.), 371
- `\newcounter` (custom counter com.), 401, 406
 - optional argument of, **401**
- `\newenvironment` (custom env.), 380–382
- `\newenvironment*` (custom env.), 384
- `\newlabel` (aux. file com.), 34, 508
- `newlattice` (pack.), 232, 385, 386
- `newlattice.sty` (sample file), 293, 379, 382, **385–394**, 394
- `\newlength` (length-command def. com.), 405
- `\newline` (line breaking com.), *see also* `\`, 79
- `\newline` (line-breaking com.), **79**, **81**
- `\newpage` (page breaking com.), **83**, 245
- `\newtheorem` (procl. com.), **105**, 107, 109, 111, 276, 308, 404
 - optional arguments of, 107, 108
 - syntax of, 108
- `\newtheorem*` (procl. com.), **109**, 381
- `\newtheoremstyle` (procl. com.), 111
- `\nexists` (\nexists math sym.), 488
- NFSS (New Font Selection Scheme), **503**, 504
- `nfssfont` (pack.), 293
- `nfssfont.tex` (\LaTeX distr. file), 61, 293
- `\NG` (Eng Eur. char.), 499
- `\ng` (eng Eur. char.), 499
- `\ngeq` (\ngeq neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\ngeqq` (\ngeqq neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\ngeqslant` (\ngeqslant neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\ngtr` (\ngtr neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\ni` (\ni binary rel.), 483
- `\nLeftarrow` (\nLeftarrow math arrow), 487
- `\nleftarrow` (\nleftarrow math arrow), 487
- `\nLeftrightarrow` (\nLeftrightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\nleq` (\nleq neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\nleqq` (\nleqq neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\nleqslant` (\nleqslant neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\nless` (\nless neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\nmid` (\nmid neg. binary rel.), 177, 485
- `noamsfonts` (doc. class opt.), 281
- `\nobreakdash` (hyph. prev. com.), 66
- `\nobreakspace` (spacing com.), 59
- `\nocite` (bibl. com.), **438**
- `\nocite*` (bibl. com.), 438
- `\node` (`TikZ` graphics pack. com.), 351
- `\nofiles` (preamble com.), 480
 - and auxiliary files, 480, 508
- `\noindent` (indentation-suppression com.), **82**, 478

- nointlimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), 280
- \nolimits (limit-control com.), **141**, **150**, 151, 162
- \nolinebreak (linebreak-suppression com.), 81
- nomath (doc. class opt.), 282
- nonamelimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), 281
- nonbreakable spaces (~ tie), **9**, 47, 50, **59**, 59, 81, 500
 - absorb spaces, 59
 - in BibTeX databases, 427
 - with cross-references, 240
- \nonfrenchspacing (spacing com.), 51
- \nopagebreak (page break suppression com.), 83
- normal
 - document font family, 72
 - font shape
 - command declarations for, **73**, 73, 103, 496, 523
 - commands for, **73**, 73, 496, 523
 - math commands for, **143**, **179**, 179, 492
- \normalfont (font shape com. dec.), **73**, 73, 103, 143, 496, 523
- \normalsize (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- nosumlimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), **280**
- \not (math com.), **177**
- \notag, 21, 22, 195, 196, **199**, 201, 213
- notation (text env.), 309
- notcite (opt. of showkeys pack.), 240
- note (beamer doc. class opt.), 336
- \note (beamer com.), 336
- note (BibTeX database field), 425
- notes, in presentations, 336, 338
- NoticesV.pdf (sample file), 530
- NoticesVI.pdf (sample file), 530
- \notin (\notin neg. binary rel.), **177**, 485
- notitlepage (doc. class opt.), **281**, 289, 466
- Nowacki, Janusz M., 504
- \nparallel (\nparallel neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nprec (\nprec neg. binary rel.), 485
- \npreceq (\npreceq neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nrightarrow (\nrightarrow math arrow), 487
- \nrightarrow (\nrightarrow math arrow), 487
- \nshortmid (\nshortmid neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nshortparallel (\nshortparallel neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nsim (\nsim neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nsubseteq (\nsubseteq neg. binary rel.), 161, 485
- \nsubseteqq (\nsubseteqq neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nsucc (\nsucc neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nsucceq (\nsucceq neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nsupseteq (\nsupseteq neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nsupseteqq (\nsupseteqq neg. binary rel.), 485
- \ntriangleleft (\ntriangleleft neg. binary rel.), 485
- \ntrianglelefteq (\ntrianglelefteq neg. binary rel.), 485
- \ntriangleright (\ntriangleright neg. binary rel.), 485
- \ntrianglerighteq (\ntrianglerighteq neg. binary rel.), 485
- \nu (ν Greek char.), 144, 482
- number (BibTeX database field), 424, 425
- numbered lists, *see* enumerate
- numbering
 - automatic, 18, 20, 34, 99, 105, 213, 234
 - of appendices, 237, 465
 - of equations, **18–20**, 40, **135–136**, 185, 195, 196, 199
 - groups, 201–202
 - in chapters of books, 465
 - in multiline math environments, 199
 - is relative, 185, 186
 - of subsidiary math environments, 212, 213
 - suppressing, 21, 22, 136, 185, 195, 196, 199, 201, 213
 - variations, **186**, 202
 - within sections, 18, 136, 232
 - within split subsid. math align. env., 212–213
- of figures, 242
- of pages, style of, 403
- of proclamations, 105, **107–108**
 - consecutively, 107–108
 - suppressing, 109, 110, 381
 - within sections, 107
- of structural units, 402, 464, 512
 - controlling, 404
 - in books, 464
 - sections, 234
 - suppressing, 235, 465
- of tables, 242
- renumbering, 19, 34, 512
- with counters, 400–408
 - resetting, 401, 403
- \numberline (toc file com.), 469
- numbers
 - counter styles for, 103, 402, **402–403**, 412
 - for equations, placement of, 279–280, 289–290
 - for proclamations, position of, 111
 - in bibliographic fields, 424
 - in lists, 99
 - keys, 46
 - line
 - in error messages, 133, 134
 - in warning messages, 11
 - page
 - referencing, 241
 - style of, 403
 - ranges, **11**, **59**, 64
 - in BibTeX databases, 424, 427
 - in index entries, 452

- real, in length commands, 405
- stored by L^AT_EX, 62–64
- stored in
 - counters, 400
 - registers, 377
- version, 509
- `\numberwithin`, **18**, **136**, 232, 464
- numeric counter style (`\arabic`), 402, 403, 412
- `\nVDash` (\nVdash neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\nVdash` (\nVdash neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\nvDash` (\nvDash neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\nvdash` (\nvdash neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\narrow` (\narrow math arrow), 487
- O'Sean, Arlene Ann, 201, 545, 550
- O, slashed (\emptyset , \varnothing), 63, 495
- Oberdiek, Heiko, 301
- obtaining
 - files from the Internet, 515–518
 - PostScript fonts, 524
 - sample files for this book, 5, 518
 - the AMS packages and AMSFonts, 518
- octothorp ($\#$), 60, 64, 498
- `\oddsidemargin` (length com.), 254
- `\odot` (\odot math op.), 486
- `\OE` ethel (E), 63, 495
- `\oe` ethel (e), 63, 495
- ogonek (Eur. accent), 499
- `\oint` (\oint large math op.), **141**, 152, 491
- old-style digits, 46
- `\oldstylenums` (old-style digits com.), 46
- `\Omega` (Ω Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\omega` (ω Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\ominus` (\ominus math op.), 486
- `\onecolumn` (doc. class opt.), 281, 289
- `\onecolumn` (single-column com.), 84
- `\oneside` (doc. class opt.), **281**, 289, 466
- `\only` (beamer com.), 315–317, **319–321**, 325
- `\onslide` (beamer com.), 315, 317, **319–321**, 324, 325
- `\openany` (doc. class opt.), 466
- `\openbib` (doc. class opt.), **290**, 290
- `\openright` (doc. class opt.), 466
- operations
 - arithmetical, 14–15, 137–139
 - binary, *see* binary operations
- operators, math, 14, 15, 17, 39, 137, 149, 150, 152, **149–153**, 370, 486, 490
 - declaring, 39, 374
 - large, 16, **17**, 141, 148, 152, **151–153**, 280, 491
 - sizing of math delimiters with, 148
 - with limits, 16, 17, 141, 149, 150, 151, 152, 280, 281, 490, 491
 - defining, 178, 179, 374
 - without limits
 - defining, 178, 179, 182, 232, 282, 374
- `\oplus` (\oplus math op.), 486
- optional
 - arguments, 55, 81, 83, 94–96, 105, 141, 142, 157, 216, 225, 232
 - multiple, 53
 - of `\`, **80**, 81, 225
 - of commands, 100, 102, 103, 107, 183, 184, 250, 260–263, 332, 401, 403, 410, 411, 416, 470
 - of custom commands, 372
 - of custom environments, 379, 382–384
 - of environments, 105, 108, 112, 115, 212, 225, 244, 245, 383, 480
 - of sectioning commands, 235, 467
 - of structural commands, 237, 464
 - of TikZ commands, 344
 - of top matter commands, 257–265, 313
 - use square brackets (`[]`), 18, **52–53**, 103, 112, 115, 268
 - bibliographic fields, 425, 428–435
 - hyphens, 12, **65**, 65, 79
- options
 - of packages, *see* package options
- organization (BIB_TE_X database field), 425, 431
- organization of files, 471–473
- orientation of pages, document class options for, 289
- orthogonality of font commands, **77**
- `\oslash` (\oslash math op.), 486
- OT1 font encoding, 522
- `\otimes` (\otimes math op.), 486
- out (hyperref bookmarks file), 303
- out (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 350, 354
- `\overbrace` (horizontal brace com.), **155**, 163
 - with a superscript, 155
- overdot ($\dot{}$ text accent), 63, 496
- `\overfullrule` (length com.), 79
- overlapping braces, 56
- overlays, *see also under* presentations
 - commands for, 319
 - layering, 315
- `\overleftarrow` ($\overleftarrow{}$ math arrow), 156
- `\overrightarrow` ($\overrightarrow{}$ math arrow), 156
- `\overline` ($\overline{}$ math line sym.), 155, **156**, 164
- overprint (beamer env.), 342
- `\overrightarrow` ($\overrightarrow{}$ math arrow), 156
- `\overset` (symbol-building com.), 162, **174**, 370
 - creating binary operations and relations with, 176
- `\owns` (\owns binary rel.), 483

- \P (§ pilcrow or paragraph)
 - math symbol, 488
 - text symbol, 64, 498
- package options, 18, *see also* specific packages,
 - 231, 240, 279–281, 283, 301–303, 385, 492, 523, 524, 526
 - are passed down from document classes, 232
 - handled electively, 295
 - preventing loading of, 281
- packages, 32, 231, 293, 502, 504
 - accents, 155
 - afterpage, 294
 - alltt, 127, 293, 510
 - ambsy, 282–284
 - amscd, 222–224, 282
 - amfonts, **283**
 - amsgen, 282, 283
 - amsidx, 284
 - amsmath, 32, 214, 280–281, **282**, 282–284, 405, 504, 510
 - amsopn, 282, 283
 - amssymb, 160, 276, 282, 283, 373
 - amstext, 283
 - amsthm, 32, 283
 - amsxtra, 154, 155, 282, 283
 - apalike, 436
 - array, 294
 - automatic loading of, 331, 506
 - babel, 294, 525–526
 - backref, 302, 303
 - biblatex, 446
 - bm, 295
 - booktabs, 120
 - calc, 295, 404, 407
 - commands in, 385
 - cyrillic, 294
 - dates of, 510
 - dcolumn, 116, 295
 - delarray, 295
 - distribution, AMS, 255, 282, **282–284**, 307, 379, 418, 436, 437, 501
 - documentation for, 95, 245, 294, 296, 341, 379, 523, 524
 - enumerate, 103, 295, 382, 386
 - eucal, 283, 284, 385, 492
 - options, **283**, 391, 492
 - eufрак, 283
 - exscale, 283, 293
 - fancyhdr, 254, 515, 518
 - fileerr, 295
 - fontenc, **523**, 525, 526
 - fontsmpl, 295
 - ftnright, 295
 - geometry, 40, 254
 - graphics, 294
 - graphicx, 25, 173, 232, 243–244, 281, 503
 - hhline, 120, 295
 - hyperref, 301–305
 - in required directory, 294
 - in tools directory, 294–296
 - in unpacked directory, 293
 - indentfirst, 295
 - inputenc, 525
 - interdependencies of, 255
 - latexsym, 160, 231, 276, 282, 293
 - layout, 252, 295
 - listings, 123
 - loading with \usepackage, 53, 173, 231
 - multiple, 232
 - longtable, 295
 - lucidabr, 524
 - makeglos, 461
 - makeidx, 293, **448**, 472
 - mathtime, 523
 - mathtools, 189
 - multicol, 84, 289, 295
 - newlattice, 232, 385, 386
 - nfssfont, 293
 - obtaining the AMS packages and AMSFonts, 518
 - options, *see* package options, *see* package options
 - options
 - paralist, 103
 - program, 123
 - psnfss, 294
 - rawfonts, 295
 - setspace, 81
 - showidx, 293, 451
 - showkeys, 240, 295
 - somedefs, 295
 - source files, 232, **292**, 437, 518
 - stix, 173
 - tabularx, 295
 - theorem, 295
 - TikZ, 26, 243, 344
 - times, 522
 - tools, 294
 - trace, 295
 - updates to AMSFonts and amsmath, 510
 - upref, 282, 283
 - varioref, 240, 295
 - verbatim, 69, 70, 127, 295, 386
 - versions of, 504, 509–510
 - xcolor, 307, 330
 - xr, 240, 296
 - xspace, 296, 366–367
 - xy-pic, 224
- page (counter), 401, 402

- `pagebackref` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 302
- `\pagebreak` (page breaking com.), **83**, 83, 478, 479
 - optional arguments of, 83
- `\pagename` (redef. name), 376
- `\pagenumbering` (page-number style com.), 403
- `\pageref` (cross-ref. com.), 19, 22, 237, **241**, 251, 304, 478
- `\pageref*` (`hyperref` cross-ref. com.), 304
- pages
 - breaking, **83**, 245
 - in `align` environment, 224
 - in `cases` subsidiary environment, 224
 - in displayed math environments, **224–225**
 - in `gather` environment, 224
 - in multiline math environments, 225
 - preventing, 225
 - components of, 252
 - headers, *see* running heads
 - layout of, **252–254**, 295
 - for `amsart` document class, 253
 - numbering, style of, 403
 - odd, starting chapters on, 466
 - orientation of, document class options for, 289
 - referencing, 241
 - with `varioref` package, 295
 - size changing with `\enlargethispage`, 83, 478, 480
 - styles of, 252–254
 - title, 512
 - document class options for, 231, 281, 282, 289
 - of articles, 231, 233
 - of books, 465, 466
 - of presentations, 26
- `pages` (BIB_T_EX database field), 425
 - page ranges in, 427
- `\pagestyle` (set page style), 252
- pagination, 478–479
- paper size, document class options for, 279, 288
- `\par` (paragraph breaking com.), 9, **48**, 49, 57, 73, 257
- `\par` (paragraph-breaking com.), 78, 98, 104
 - in error messages, 82
- `\paragraph` (struct. com.), **234**, 235, 464
- paragraph (counter), 402
- paragraph boxes, 92–93
- paragraph text symbol, *see* `\P`
- `\paragraph*` (struct. com.), 235
- `\paragraphname` (`hyperref` redef. name), 305
- paragraphs, 48, **82**
 - breaking into lines, 11, 78, 80, 507
 - breaking lines in, 65
 - hanging indents, 82
 - horizontal alignment of, 104
 - indentation of first lines, 82, 86, 295, **405**
 - interline spacing of, 41
 - terminating
 - with blank lines, 9, 40, **48**, 82, 98, 124
 - with `\par` command, **48**, 49, 57, 73, 78, 82, 104
 - vertical spacing between, 104, 405, 410, 414, 475
- `paralist` (pack.), 103
- `\parallel` (`||` binary rel.), 483
- `\parbox` (box com.), 89, 91, **92**, 93, 118, 407
 - in `tabular` environments, 92
- `parentequation`, 403
- parentheses (`()`), 7, 46
 - as math delimiters, **15**, 17, 41, 145, 145, 164, 200, 489
 - in index entries, 452
 - suppressing the use of in tags, 185
- `\parindent` (length com.), **405**, 416
- `\parsep` (length com.), 409, **410**, 414, 416
- `\parskip` (length com.), **405**, 409, 410, 416, 475
- `\part` (struct. com.), 235, 286, 332, **464**
- `part` (counter), 402
- `\partial` (math sym.), 488
- `\partname` (redef. name), 376
 - and `hyperref` package, 305
- `\partopsep` (length com.), 410
- parts
 - in books, 464
 - in presentations, 336
- Patashnik, Oren, 421, 445, 550
- path attributes, TikZ graphics, 353–356
- pathnames, on Mac, Windows computer, and UNIX systems, 473
- `\pause` (`beamer` com.), 29, 85, **315**, 315, 319
- `pc` (point abs. unit), 405
- `pcr` (PSNFSS font name), 522
- Windows computers, 5, 473, 502
 - FTP clients, 516
- PDF (Portable Document Format), 300–301, 480
 - files
 - bibliographic citations in, 302
 - bookmarks in, 303
 - creating, 301
 - external hyperlinks in, 304–305
 - for graphics, **243**
 - for legacy documents, 301
 - for presentations, 26, 307–342
 - hyperlinks in, 301–305
 - JavaScript in, 300

- PDF (Portable Document Format) (*cont.*)
 - size of, 300
 - suppressing hyperlinks in, 304
 - typeset, 6, 301
 - viewing in Web browsers, 300
- fonts
 - partial downloading of, 300
 - proprietary, 300
- `pdftex` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 301
- percent (%)
 - as comment character, 8, 45, **67–69**, 121, 276, 455
 - in BibTeX databases, 69, 442
 - as text symbol, 7, 60, 64, 498
 - in e-mail addresses, 262
- periods (.), 7, 46, **49–51**
 - and initials, 51
 - and italic correction, 75
 - and spacing rules, 49–51
 - end of sentences, 49
 - following capital letters, 50
 - in abbreviations, 49–50
 - in bibliographies, 50
 - in BibTeX databases, 426
 - terminating sentences with, **48–51**
- `\perp` (\perp binary rel.), 483
- Personal TeX, Inc., 523
- personalized templates
 - for AMS document classes, 275–278
- `\phantom` (spacing com.), **84–85**, 169, **171–172**, 206, 407
- PHDTHESIS (bibl. entry type), 424, **433**
- `\Phi` (Φ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\phi` (ϕ Greek char.), 144, 482
- phv (PSNFSS font name), 522
- `\Pi` (Π Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\pi` (π Greek char.), 144, 482
- pica (pc abs. unit), 405
- `picture` (drawing env.), 243
- pilcrow (\P text sym.), 64, 498
- `\pitchfork` (\pitchfork binary rel.), 484
- placement
 - of commas in formulas, 135
 - of equation numbers, 279–280, 289–290
 - of equations, 279–280, 289–290
 - of figures, **244**, 245, 478, 480
 - of `\index` commands, **455–456**, 479
 - of index in document, 448, 458
 - of `\label` commands, 479
 - of limits, 281
 - of roots, 142
 - of tables, 478, 480
 - of text boxes, 96
- plain
 - BibTeX style, 422
 - page style, 252
 - theorem style, **109**, 109–111
- `plain.bst` (BibTeX style file), 422
- `plain.tex` (Plain TeX source file), 505
- platform independence
 - of graphics, 307
- plus (+), 14, 168, 171, 172, 200, 201
 - as binary operation, 486
- plus and minus rule, **169**, 171, 172
 - and subformulas, 200
 - in multiline environments, 197
- `\pm` (\pm math op.), 486
- `\pmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 16–17, **217**
- `\pmb` (poor man's bold font com.), **181–182**, 282
- `\pmod` (\pmod math op.), 15, **151**, 151
- `\pod` (\pod math op.), 15, **151**, 151
- poetry, typing, 124–125
- point (pt abs. unit), 11, 40, 72, 76, 78, 79, 87, 89, 92, 290, 405
- poor man's bold, **181–182**, 282
- portability
 - of bibliographic databases, 426, 428
 - of prohibited characters, 47
- Portable Document Format, *see under* PDF
- Portable Graphics Format, 307
- position, of proclamation numbers, 111
- PostScript (PS), 299
 - documents on the Internet, 299
 - files
 - including fonts in, 299
 - size of, **299**
 - fonts, 299, 503, **521–524**
 - AMSFonTS, 281, 283, 504, 510
 - Computer Modern, 31, 503, 505, **521**
 - European Modern, 504
 - obtaining, 524
 - using with L^ATeX, 294, 523
- PostScript New Font Selection Scheme, *see* PSNFSS
- `\pounds`
 - math symbol (\pounds), 488
 - pound sign or sterling (\pounds), 499
- `\Pr` (Pr math op.), 150, 490
- preamble, **230**, **23–233**
 - commands in, 18, 24, 26, 54, 68, 82, 105, 107, 109, 111, 136, 179, 222, 231, 232, 276, 282, 301, 308–309, 344, 364, 374, 381, 385, 404, 460, 472, 480, 508, 509
 - custom commands in, 232, 364
 - customizing, in template files, 275
 - defining counters in, 402
 - proclamations defined in, 232
- `\prec` (\prec binary rel.), 483
- `\precapprox` (\precapprox binary rel.), 484

- `\preccurlyeq` (\leq binary rel.), 484
- `\preceq` (\leq binary rel.), 483
- `\precnapprox` (\approx neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\precneqq` (\approx neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\precnsim` (\approx neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\precsim` (\approx binary rel.), 484
- preparation
 - final, of books, 476–480
 - of illustrations, 477
- presentations, **26–29**, **307**
 - `babybeamer1`, 316, 315–317
 - `babybeamer2`, 313
 - `babybeamer3`, 320
 - `babybeamer4`, 322
 - `babybeamer5`, 321
 - `babybeamer6`, 324
 - `babybeamer7`, 327–329
 - `babybeamer8`, 330
 - `babybeamer9`, 333
 - `babybeamer10`, 341, 342
 - `beamerstructure1`, 334
 - `beamerstructure2`, 336, 337
 - body of, 309
 - columns in, 329–330
 - commands for, 27, 330, 332, 340
 - optional arguments of, 332
 - cross-referencing within, 310
 - equations in, 310
 - flexibility in, 340, 341
 - frames in, 340
 - hyperlinks in, 325–329, 340, 341
 - in color, 330–332
 - lists in, 321–323
 - navigation symbols, 336
 - notes in, 336, 338
 - overlays in, **315**, 315–325
 - commands for, 29, 315, 316, 319
 - examples of, 317–318
 - layering, 315, 317
 - specifications, 319, 323
 - syntax of, 319–321
 - parts in, 336
 - planning, 340–341
 - preamble of, 26, 308–309
 - `quickbeamer1`, 309, 311, 312, 313
 - `quickbeamer2`, 313, 314
 - sectioning of, 310
 - sidebars, 310
 - sidebars in, 325, 332
 - slides, 26, 315
 - structure of, 332
 - tables of contents in, 333, 340
 - themes for, 26, 310, 313, 338, **339**, 340
 - color options, 339
 - font options, 340
 - theorems in, 340
 - top matter of, 26, 308–309, 313
 - with `beamer`, 26
 - with `beamer` document class, 307–342
- preventing
 - case changes in bibliographic entries, 427
 - hyphenation, 65–66, 89
 - indentation of paragraphs, 82
 - line breaks, 81, 89
 - page breaks, **80**, 83, 225
 - removal
 - of horizontal space, 85
 - of vertical space, 87
 - spaces following environments, 382
- `\prime` ($'$ math sym.), 488
- prime ($'$), 14, 138, 178, 488
- primitive commands, 376, 505
- PrintDirect
 - L^AT_EX app for iPad, 533
- Printer Pro
 - L^AT_EX app for iPad, 533
- printers
 - drivers for, 34, **507**
 - specifying for `hyperref` package, 301
 - DVI drivers for, 294, 517
 - for iPad, 533
- `\Printindex` (index com. for multiple indexes), 460
- `\printindex` (index com.), **448**, 458
- printing
 - typeset (DVI) files, 507
 - typeset (PDF) files, 507
- `proc` (doc. class), 506
- `proc-1` (doc. class), 256, 376
- PROCEEDINGS (bibl. entry type), 424, 432–433, **435**
- proceedings, conference, in B^IB^T_EX
 - database files, 424
- processed index files, *see* `ind`
- processing
 - bibliographies, 436–445
 - indexes, 456–459
- proclamations, 40, 97, **104–111**, 408
 - commands for
 - `\newtheorem` (procl. com.), **105**, 107, 109, 111, 276, 404
 - `\newtheorem*` (procl. com.), **109**, 381
 - `\newtheoremstyle`, 111
 - `\theoremstyle` (procl. com.), 109–111
 - `\theoremstyle*` (procl. com.), 109–111
 - counters for, 400
 - defining, **105**, 107, 108, 111, 276, 381, 404
 - in preamble, 232
 - with `theorem` package, 295

- proclamations (*cont.*)
 - environments for
 - theorem**, 35, 105, 108, 324, 383
 - invoking, 35, **105**, 108, 324, 383
 - lines following, 40, 98
 - lists in, 106
 - logical design using, 512
 - names of, 108
 - numbering of
 - consecutively, 107–108
 - within sections, 107
 - position of numbers, 111
 - styles of, **109–111**, 504
 - definition, **109**, 109–110
 - plain**, **109**, 109–110
 - remark, **109**, 109–110
 - unnumbered, 109, 110, 381
- `\prod` (\prod large math op.), 152, 491
- products, 17, 151
- `products.pdf` (sample illus. file), 309
- `program` (pack.), 123
- programs, typing, 121–123, 125–127
- prohibited keys, 7, 47
- `\projlim` (`\projlim` math op.), 150, 490
- prompts, **511**
 - *** (interactive), **95**, 375–377, **511**
 - ****, 511
 - ?**, 511
 - file name, 511
 - responding to, **511**
- `proof` (text env.), 97, **111–113**, 283, 309
 - changing q.e.d. symbol, 373
 - lines following, 40, 98
 - lists in, 111
 - optional arguments of, 112
 - placement of q.e.d. symbol, 112
- `\proofname` (redef. name), 376
- proofs, 111–113
- proportional fonts, 71
- propositions, *see* proclamations
- `\propto` (\propto binary rel.), 483
- `\protect` (protect fragile commands), **57**, 234, 235, 464, 469
- protecting
 - capitalization in bibliographic entries, 427
 - fragile commands, **57**, 234, 235, 464, 469
- protocols
 - File Transfer, *see* FTP
 - Hypertext Transfer, *see* HTTP
- `\providecommand` (custom com.), 371, **373**, 377
- `\providecommand*` (custom com.), 371
- `\ProvidesPackage` (pack. com.), 510
- providing commands, 373
- PS, *see* PostScript
- `ps2pdf` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 301
- `psamsfonts`
 - `amsfonts` package option, 283
 - document class option, 281
- `psfonts.ins` (PSNFSS distr. file), 522
- `\Psi` (Ψ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\psi` (ψ Greek char.), 144, 482
- PSNFSS (PostScript New Font Selection Scheme), 522, 523
 - distribution, 522–523
 - font names (Berry scheme), 522
- `psnfss` (`\LaTeX` distr. directory), 293
- `psnfss` (pack.), 294
- pt (point abs. unit), 11, 40, 72, 76, 78, 79, 87, 89, 92, 290, 405
- ptm (PSNFSS font name), 522
- `publisher` (`\BIBTeX` database field), 424, 425
- publishers, preparing manuscripts for, 463
- punctuation
 - in `\BIBTeX` databases, 423–428, 444–445
 - marks, 7, 11, 41, **46**, 58, **58–59**, 63, 64, 136, 367, 495, 498
- pybibliographer bibl. manager, 445
- q.e.d. symbol, 112, 373
- `\qedhere` (proof com.), 41, 113
- `\qedsymbol` (\square math sym.), 111, 373
 - suppressing, 112
- `\qqquad` (spacing com.), 84, 87, 170, 170, 207, 493, 500
- `\quad` (spacing com.), 18, 84, 87, 134, 170, 170, 207, 493, 500
- question marks (**?**), 7, 46
 - Spanish (¿), 63, 64, 495, 498
 - terminating sentences with, 48–51
- `quickbeamer.pdf` (sample file), 308
- `quickbeamer.tex` (sample file), 308–309
- `quickbeamer1.pdf` (sample file), 309
- `quickbeamer1.tex` (sample file), 309, 310
- `quickbeamer2.pdf` (sample file), 313
- `quickbeamer2.tex` (sample file), 313
- quiet mode, 511
- `quotation` (disp. text env.), **124**, 408
- quotation marks, 7, 47, **58**, 58, 64
 - double quote key, 7, 46, 47, **58**
 - in `\BIBTeX` database fields, 444, 445
 - in `\BIBTeX` entries, 435
 - in `\index` commands, 454
 - European, 499
 - single quote key, 7, 14, 46, **58**
 - typing, 9
- quotations, typing, 123–124
- `quote` (disp. text env.), 40, **123**, 408
- `\quotedblbase` (Eur. quot. mark), 499
- quoting, special characters in `\index` commands, 454

- `\r` (° ring text accent), 63, 496
- radius (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 345
- `\raggedleft` (align. command dec.), 104
- `\raggedright` (align. command dec.), 104
- Rahtz, Sebastian, 243, 301, 503, 548
- `\raisebox` (box com.), 96, 173
- ranges, numeric, **11**, **59**, 64, 498
 - in BibTeX databases, 424, 427
 - in index entries, 452
- `\rangle` () math delimiter), 145, **146**, 489
- rawfonts (pack.), 295
- `\rbrace` (} math delimiter), 41, 145, 489
- `\rbrack` (] math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\rceil` (] math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\Re` (\Re math sym.), 488
- read-only, making templates, 278
- readability
 - of documents, 76, 340
 - of source files, 13, 14, 49, 115, 135, 159, 361–365, 379, 416
- Reader, Adobe Acrobat, *see under* Adobe Reader
- real numbers, in length commands, 405
- `rectangle` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 349, 351, 352
- redefinable names, 304, 305, 361, **375**, 376, 526
- redefining commands, 373
- `\ref` (cross-ref. com.), 19, 22, 40, 69, 103, 136, 199, **237**, 237, 238, 240, 283, 295, 304, 383
- `\ref*` (hyperref cross-ref. com.), 304
- references
 - absolute, 20, 99, 186, **240–241**
 - bibliographic, 50, **245–251**, 310, 373, 408, 436
 - citing, 19, **250**
 - citing with BibTeX, 438
 - including without citing, **438**
 - defining, **19**, 22, 37, 40, 136, 199, 213, 234, **237**, 310
 - symbolic, 69
 - symbolic, showing in margins, **240**, 295
 - to equations, **19**, 22, 40, 136, 187, 199, 202, 237, 238, 248, 310
 - to pages, 19, 22, 237, **241**, 304, 478
 - and `varioref` package, 295
 - to sections, 19, 22, 103, 136, 199, **237**, 238, 240, 283, 295, 304, 383
- referencing, *see* cross-referencing *or* symbolic referencing
 - referencing, 20, *see* cross-referencing *or* symbolic referencing
- `\refname` (redef. name), 376
- `\refstepcounter` (cross-ref. counter incr. com.), 403
- registered trademark ($\text{\textcircled{R}}$ text sym.), 64, 498
- registers, 377
- relations, binary, *see* binary relations
- relative
 - numbering of equations, 185, 186, 241
 - spaces, 87
 - units, 87, 89, 92, **405**
- `\relax` (do nothing com.), 384
- release dates, of L^AT_EX, 68, 233, 509
- `remark` (procl. style), **109**, 109–111
- `\renewcommand` (custom com.), 39, 70, 71, 81, 103, 112, 119, 251, 304, 368, 371, 375, **373–375**, 377, 381, 382, 403, 404
- `\renewcommand*` (custom com.), 371
- `\renewenvironment` (custom com.), 382, **384**
- `\renewenvironment*` (custom com.), 384
- renumbering, automatic, 19, 34, 512
- `report` (doc. class), 235, 285, 288, **285–290**, 376, 506
- reports, technical, in BibTeX database files, 434
- `reqno`
 - `amsmath` package option, 284
 - document class option, 18, 231, **279**, 289
- required
 - arguments, 93, 94, 157, 177, 256, 257, 512
 - multiple, 13, 53, 117, 174, 176, 177, 254, 293, 378, 406, 407
 - of commands, 13, **53**, 117, 174, 176, 177, 239, 254, 263, 406, 468, 472, 496
 - of environments, **53**, 115, 207, 208, 219, 220, 247–248, 250, 291, **383–384**, 470
 - use braces ({ }), 6, 10, 13, **52**, 53, 506
 - bibliographic fields, 425, 428–435
- `required` (L^AT_EX distr. directory), **293**, 517
 - packages in, 294
- `\RequirePackage` (pack. com.), 173, 385
- research support (`\thanks` top matter com.), 70, 262–264, 277, 286
- resetting counters, 402, 403
- resolution, of Type 1 fonts, 521
- Return key, 7, 9, 47, 133, 511
- `\rfloor` (] math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\rhd` (\triangleright math op.), 486
- `\rho` (ρ Greek char.), 144, 482

- `\right` (math delim.), 41, **146**, 148, 164, 218
 - blank, 146, 162
 - must be balanced, 146, 200
- `right` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351, 356
- right double quote (")
 - text symbol, 58, 64, 498
 - typing, 9
- right justification of text, 10, 51
- right single quote (')
 - key, 7, 9, 46, **58**
 - text symbol, **58**, 499
- `\right)` () math delimiter), 15, 17, 41, 145, 146, 164, 200, 217
- `\right.` (blank math delim.), 146
- `\right>` () math delimiter), 146
- `\right]` (] math delimiter), 15, 145, 161
- `\Rightarrow` (\Rightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\rightarrow` (\rightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\rightarrowtail` (\rightarrowtail math arrow), 487
- `\rightharpoondown` (\searrow math arrow), 487
- `\rightharpoonup` (\searrow math arrow), 487
- `\rightleftarrows` (\rightleftharpoons math arrow), 487
- `\rightleftharpoons` (\rightleftharpoons math arrow), 487
- `\rightmargin` (length com.), 409, **410**, 413
- `\righttriarrows` (\Rightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\rightsquigarrow` (\rightsquigarrow math arrow), 487
- `\rightthreetimes` (\times math op.), 486
- `\right|` (| math delimiter), 17, 146, 160, 169, 171
- ring (° text accent), 63, 496
- ring A (Å), 63, 495
- ring a (å), 63, 495
- `\risingdotseq` (\doteq binary rel.), 484
- Ritter, R. M., 545
- `\rm` (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 77
- `\rmfamily` (font shape com. dec.), 73, 103, 496
- `rmfamily` (font shape env.), 103
- `\Roman` (uppercase roman-numeral counter-style com.), 402
- roman
 - document font family, **72**, 72, 522
 - font shape, 19, 71, 73, **103**, 283, 496
 - math, **179**, 179, 374
- `\roman` (lowercase roman-numeral counter-style com.), 103, 402
- roots, 18, 141–142
 - n*-th, 18, **141**
 - placement of, 142
 - square, 18, **141**
 - using struts with, 183
- Rose, Kristoffer H., 224
- `rotate` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351
- row separator (\\), 16, 20, 21, 23, 80, 104, 115, 121, 122, 125, 153, 195, 196, 198, 200, 210, 213, 225, 257–261, 278, 286, 291
- Rowley, Chris, xxix, 503, 504, 550
- `\Rrightarrow` (\Rightarrow math arrow), 487
- `\Rsh` (\P math arrow), 487
- `\rtimes` (\rtimes math op.), 486
- rubber lengths, **377**, **408**, 410, 507
- `\rule` (box com.), 95, 96, 120
- rules (lines), filling lines with, *see also* lines (rules), 88, 95
- running
 - B^BT_EX, 436–445
 - MakeIndex*, 456–459
- running heads, 234, **252–254**
 - author's name in, 259
 - fragile commands in, 57
 - title in, 258, 278
- `\rVert` (|| math delimiter), 146
- `\rvert` (| math delimiter), 146
- `\S` (§)
 - math symbol, 488
 - section text symbol, 64, 498
- sample files
 - `amsart.tpl`, 275
 - `amsproc` template, 279
 - `babybeamer1.pdf`, 315–317
 - `babybeamer2.tex`, 315
 - `babybeamer3.tex`, 320
 - `babybeamer4.tex`, 325
 - `babybeamer5.tex`, 321
 - `babybeamer6.tex`, 324, 325
 - `babybeamer6block.tex`, 325
 - `babybeamer7.tex`, 325, 327–329
 - `babybeamer8.tex`, 329
 - `babybeamer9.tex`, 331
 - `babybeamer10.tex`, 341
 - `beamerstructure.tex`, 333, 336
 - `cleardoublepage.sty`, 83
 - `covers.pdf`, 25
 - `firstarticle.tex`, 256, 308, 310, **23–310**
 - `firstarticle.tex`, 24, 35, 36
 - `firstarticlei.tex`, 450, 457, 459
 - `firstarticleiill.tex`, 26
 - `firstpresentation.tex`, 26
 - `fonttbl.tex`, 61, 114
 - `formulanote.tex`, 12–14, 38–39
 - `formulanotebad1.tex`, 38
 - `ggamsart.tpl`, 278
 - `inbibl.tpl`, 247

- legacy-article.tex, 286, 287
- letter.tex, 290–292
- Louisville.tex, 26
- myams.tpl, 275–278
- newlattice.sty, 293, 379, 382, **385–394**, 394
- NoticesV.pdf, 530
- NoticesVI.pdf, 530
- obtaining, 5
- of presentations, 308–313
- products.pdf (illus. file), 309
- quickbeamer.pdf, 308
- quickbeamer.tex, 308–309
- quickbeamer1.pdf, 309
- quickbeamer1.tex, 309, 310
- quickbeamer2.pdf, 313
- quickbeamer2.tex, 313
- sample.cls (doc. class), 8
- secondarticle-ref.tex, 302, 304
- secondarticle.tex, 104, 109, 111, 213, 251, 256, 257, **268–272**, 370, 394, 436, 512
- source file, 268–272
- typeset, 268–275
- secondarticleb.bib, 436, 438, **436–442**
- secondarticleb.tex, 421, 437–439, 442
- secondarticleccom.tex, 375, 382, 512, **394–512**
- STIX.pdf, 174
- SymbolTables.pdf, 11, 13
- template.bib, 423, 436, 445
- textnote1.tex, 8–9
- textnote1bad.tex, 11
- textnote2.tex, 9–11
- topmat.tpl, 265
- sample.cls, 8
- sample.cls (doc. class), 8
- samples
 - font, 295
 - of bibliographies, **245–247**, 423, 436, **437–438**, 445
 - of command (style) files, 293, 379, 382, **385–394**
 - of indexes, 450, 448–450
- samples (folder), **5**, 8, 10–12, 23, 26, 61, 83, 114, 174, 213, 247, 265, 268, 275, 278, 286, 290, 302, 308, 309, 313, 321, 324, 325, 336, 340, 341, 375, 385, 394, 423, 436, 438, 448, 466, 512, 526, 530
- creating, 5
- sans serif
 - document font family, **72**, 77, 522
 - font shape, 72, 73, **103**, **179**, 179, 492, 496
 - Helvetica, 72, 522
- \sb (math subscript com.), 139
- \sc (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 77
- scale (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 352
- scaling graphics
 - in figures, 244
- Schöpf, Rainer, 503, 550
- Schandl, Bernd, 103
- scharfes s (ß, SS), 63, 495
- Schleyer, Antoinette Tingley, 201, 545, 550
- school (BibT_EX database field), 425
- Schröder, Martin, 503
- scope
 - delimited by braces, **55–57**
 - of \allowdisplaybreaks commands, 224
 - of command declarations, 104, **366**, 381
 - of commands, **55–57**, 73, 119
 - global and local, 57
 - setting, with environments, 79, 197
- \scriptscriptstyle (math font size com.), **182**, 187
- \scriptsize (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- \scriptstyle (math font size com.), **182**, 187
- \scshape (font shape com. dec.), 73, **74**, 103, 496
- scshape (font shape env.), 103
- \searrow (↘ math arrow), 487
- \sec (sec math op.), 149, 490
- secnumdepth (counter), 404
- secondarticle-ref.tex (sample file), 302, 304
- secondarticle.tex (sample file), 104, 109, 111, 213, 251, 256, 257, **268–272**, 370, 394, 436, 512
- source file, 268–272
- typeset, 268–275
- secondarticleb.aux (sample aux. file), 441
- secondarticleb.bbl (sample bibl. file), 442
- secondarticleb.bib (sample bibl. file), 436, 438, **436–442**
- secondarticleb.blg (sample BibT_EX log file), 441
- secondarticleb.tex (sample file), 421, 437–439, 442
- secondarticleccom.tex (sample file), 375, 382, 512, **394–512**

- `\section` (struct. com.), 237, **234–237**, 313, 332, 465
 - optional argument of, 235
- `section` (counter), 400, 402
- `section` (§ text sym.), 64, 498
- `\section*` (struct. com.), 235, 465
- sectioning
 - commands
 - optional arguments of, 236
 - provided by `amsart` doc. class, 236
 - provided by `article` doc. class, 236
 - provided by book doc. classes, 464–465
 - syntax of, 235
 - of articles, **234–237**
 - of books, **464–465**, 473
 - of documents, 8, **234**, 23–237, 245, 251, 268, 286, 290–292, 408, 436, 447, 457, **464–465**, 502, 512
 - of presentations, 310
- `\sectionname` (redef. name)
 - and `hyperref` package, 305
- sections, numbering of, 234
 - in books, 464
 - of equations within, 18, 136, 232
 - of proclamations within, 107
- `\see` (indexing cross-ref. com.), 455
- `\seename` (redef. name), 376
- `\selectfont` (font selection com.), 78
- selecting
 - files to include, **244**, 402, 471, **472**, 473
 - fonts, 71–78
- semicolon (;), 7, 46
- `semithick` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- sentences
 - terminating, 9, **48–51**
 - with periods, 262
- `series` (BIBTEX database field), 425
- series commands, for fonts, *see under*
 - font commands *and* font command declarations
- serif (font shape), *see also under* roman, **72**, 72
- Seroul, Raymond, 545, 550
- `\setbeamercolor` (beamer com.), 332
- `\setbeamertemplate` (beamer com.), 336
- `\setcounter` (counter-setting com.), 57, 216, **401**, 404
- `\setlength` (length setting com.), 40, 82, 94, **406**
- `setlength` environment, 79, 197
- `\setminus` (\backslash math op.), 486
- `setspace` (pack.), 81
- `\settodepth` (measurement com.), 407
- `\settoheight` (measurement com.), 407
- `\settowidth` (measurement com.), 407
- `\sffamily` (font shape com. dec.), 73, 77, 103, 496
- `sffamily` (font shape env.), 103
- SGML (Standard Generalized Markup Language), 503
- shape commands, for fonts, *see under*
 - font commands *and* font command declarations
- `\sharp` (\sharp math sym.), 488
- `shift` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 352
- short
 - arguments, of custom commands, 371–372
 - arguments, of custom environments, 384
 - commands, **57**, 73, 257, 268
 - pages, warnings about, 507
- shorthand, *see under* custom commands
- `\shortmid` (\mid binary rel.), 484
- `\shortparallel` (\parallel binary rel.), 484
- `\shoveleft` (align. com.), 198
- `\shoveright` (align. com.), 198
- `\show` (command-examination com.), **375**, 377, 511
- `\showhyphens` (hyph.-disp. com.), 66
- `showidx` (pack.), 293, 451
- `showkeys` (pack.), 240, 295
 - options, 240
- `\showthe` (value-examination com.), 94, **377**, 377, 511
- shrinkable lengths, 83, 84, **377**, **408**, 410, 414, **507**
- side-setting math symbols, 177–178
- sidebars, in `beamer` presentations, 310, 313, 325
- `\sideset` (math com.), **177–178**
- `\Sigma` (Σ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\sigma` (σ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\signature` (letter com.), 291
- `\sim` (\sim binary rel.), 483
- `\simeq` (\simeq binary rel.), 483
- simple alignment, of formulas, 21, 20–22, 22
- `\sin` (sin math op.), 17, 149, 149, 179, 490
- single
 - guillemet, 499
 - quote, 9
 - keys, 7, 14, 46, **58**
 - text symbols, 499
- single quotation, 499

- single-lined boxes, *see under* boxes
- `\sinh` (\sinh math op.), 149, 490
- size
 - of files
 - PDF, 300, 301
 - PostScript, **299**
 - scanned, 301
 - of fonts, 40, 72, 76, 103, 497, **76–497**
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - document class options for, 279, 288
 - in math, 182
 - of hyperlinks in PDF files, 304
 - of math delimiters, **147–148**, 164
 - of paper, document class options for, 279, 288
- `\sl` (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 77, 78
- slanted (font shape), 71, 73, **74**, 77, 78, **103**, 136, 496
 - and italic correction, 75
 - context dependence of, 74
- slashed L's and O's (l, L, ø, Ø), 63, 495
- slides, *see under* presentations, *see under* presentations
- `slides` (obs. doc. class), 285, 506
- `\slshape` (font shape com. dec.), 73, **74**, 75, 77, 78, 103, 496
- `slshape` (font shape env.), 103
- slugs, 79, 231, 281, 289
- `\SMALL` (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- `\Small` (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- `\small` (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- small caps (font shape), 71, 73, **74**, **103**, 496
 - for abbreviations and acronyms, 74, 474
- `\smaller` (font size com.), 77
- `\smallfrown` (\frown binary rel.), 484
- `\smallint` (\int math sym.), 488
- `smallmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 218
- `\smallsetminus` (\setminus math op.), 486
- `\smallskip` (spacing com.), 40, **86**
- `\smallsmile` (\smile binary rel.), 484
- `\smash` (spacing com.), 96, **184**
 - optional argument of, **184**
- `\smile` (\smile binary rel.), 483
- Snow, Wynter, 545, 550
- solid boxes, 95, *see also* struts
- `solution` (beamer distr. directory), 340
- `somedefs` (pack.), 295
- sort keys, 453–454
 - case sensitivity of, 459
- sorting, of index entries, 453–454
- source files, **6**, 5–7, 12, 23, 32, 37, 48, 65, 70, 125, 417, 446, 458, 467
 - errors in, 38–39, 511
 - putting on the Internet, 299–305
 - disadvantages of, 299
 - readability of, 13, 49, 135, 159, 361–365, 379, 416
 - structure of, *see also* document typesetting, **5**, 11, 19, 34, 35, 38, 47, 57, 506, 511
 - white space in, 14
- sources, for fonts, 524
- `\sp` (math superscript com.), 139, 163
- space bar, 7, 9, 47, 307, 315
- spaces
 - at the beginning of a line, 48, 85
 - at the end of a line, 48, 49, 67
 - blue, *see also* tie, unbreakable spaces, nonbreakable spaces, 59
 - consist of glue, 507
 - expanding, 88
 - filling lines with, 88
 - in arguments of commands, 68
 - `\bibitem`, 250
 - `\cite`, 250
 - `\index`, 459
 - in command definitions, 365
 - in command names, 52
 - in custom commands, 296
 - in delimited commands, 378–379
 - in math environments, 133
 - in `tabular` environments, 115
 - in `\verb` commands, 128
 - in `verbatim` environments, 126
 - interword (`_`), 9, **49**, 54, 84, 170, 500
 - multiple, act as one, 14, 48, 54
 - separating words with, 9, **48**, 382, 427
 - suppressing, 382, 455
 - terminating commands with, 13, **52**, **134**
 - typed for readability, 14, 49, 115, 365
 - unbreakable (\sim tie), **9**, 47, **50**, **59**, 59, 81, 500
 - absorb spaces, 59
 - in B^ET_EX databases, 427
 - with cross-references, 240
 - visible (`_`), 9, 47
 - and `\verb*` command, 128
- spacing
 - between characters, 507
 - between dots with `\hdotsfor` commands, 216
 - between math symbols, 168–172
 - commands, *see* spacing commands

- spacing (*cont.*)
 - determined by document classes, 84
 - horizontal
 - in math, **13**, **134–135**, **168–172**, 216, 219
 - in text, 9, 40, **84–86**, 95, 106, 416, 493, 500
 - interword, 9, 48–51, 54, 59, 84, 382, 427, 500
 - preventing removal of, 85
 - in text, **84–88**
 - intercolumn, 191, 193, 203, 204
 - in aligned math environments, 207, 211
 - in **tabular** environments, 115
 - interline, 41, 148, 225, 368, 476
 - adjusting, **78**, 80–82, 86, 95
 - double, 81–82
 - rules
 - and delimited commands, 378–379
 - for commands, 52, 134
 - in arguments of **\index** commands, 459
 - in math, 13, 14, 134–135, 168–172, 183–184
 - in text, 9, 14, **48–51**, **84–88**
 - in **\text** commands, 134
 - vertical
 - adding to table of contents, 468
 - adjusting, 119, 475
 - adjusting with the **setspace** package, 81
 - in boxes, 96
 - in indexes, 251, 447
 - in math, **183–184**
 - in text, 40, **86–87**, 184, 377, 468, 476, 480
 - preventing removal of, 87
 - using the **setspace** package, 81
- spacing commands
 - avoiding direct use of, 475
 - horizontal, *see* horizontal spacing
 - vertical, *see* vertical spacing
- \spadesuit** (\spadesuit math sym.), 488
- \spbreve** (\sim math accent), 154, 492
- \spcheck** (\vee math accent), 154, 163, 492
- \spdddot** (\cdots math accent), 154, 492
- \spddot** ($\ddot{}$ math accent), 154, 492
- \spdot** ($\dot{}$ math accent), 154, 492
- special
 - braces, 13, 55–57, 132, 133, 136
 - balancing, 56
 - characters, 11, 47, **60**, 60, **61**, 495–499
 - in **\index** commands, 454
 - keys, 7, 12, **47**, 60
- spelling checkers, 35
- \sphat** ($\hat{}$ math accent), 154, 492
- \sphericalangle** (\sphericalangle math sym.), 488
- Spivak, Michael D., 502, 523
- split** (subsid. math align. env.), 192, 194, **212–214**, 280
 - and **\allowdisplaybreaks** commands, 225
 - numbering of equations within, 212–213
 - rules for, 213
- splitting
 - documents into multiple files, 471–473
 - formulas across lines, 196–198
- \sptilde** (\sim math accent), 154, 492
- \sqcap** (\sqcap math op.), 486
- \sqcup** (\sqcup math op.), 486
- \sqrt** ($\sqrt{}$ math com.), 13, 18, **141**, 171
 - optional argument of, 53
- \sqsubset** (\sqsubset binary rel.), 483
- \sqsubseteq** (\sqsubseteq binary rel.), 483
- \sqsupset** (\sqsupset binary rel.), 483
- \sqsupseteq** (\sqsupseteq binary rel.), 483
- \square** (\square math sym.), 488
- square roots, 18, **141**
- \SS** ($\text{\text{SS}}$), 63, 495
- \ss** ($\text{\text{ss}}$), 63, 495
- stacking math symbols, 41, 176, 174–177
- \stackrel** (symbol-building com.), 41
- Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML), 503
- \star** (\star math op.), 486
- start angle** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 349
- start of chapters, document class options for, 466
- \stepcounter** (counter-incr. com.), 403
- sterling (\pounds text sym.), 499
- STIX
 - stix.pdf** (math symbol list), 174
 - fonts, 173
 - math symbols, **173**, 167–173
- stix** (pack.), 173
- STIX math symbols, **174**
- stix.pdf** (math symbol list), 174
- STIX.pdf** (sample file), 174
- \stop** (interactive control com.), 511
- stretchable
 - horizontal braces, 155–156
 - lengths, 84, **377**, **408**, 410, 507
 - lines, 156
 - math arrows, **157**, 223–224
 - math delimiters, 41, 146

- math symbols, 155–157
- vertical spacing, in displayed text environments, 408
- STRING** (bibl. entry type), 436
- structural commands
 - `\appendix`, 237, 465
 - `\backmatter`, 465
 - `\chapter`, 235, 237, 286, **464**, 464, 465
 - `\frontmatter`, 465
 - hierarchy of, 234, 235, 464
 - in presentations, 332
 - `\mainmatter`, 465
 - optional arguments of, 235
 - `\paragraph`, **234**, 235, 464
 - `\paragraph*`, 235
 - `\part`, 235, 286, **464**
 - provided by `amsart` doc. class, 236
 - provided by `article` doc. class, 236
 - provided by book doc. classes, 464–465
 - `\section`, 237, **234–237**, 465
 - `\section*`, 235, 465
 - `\subparagraph`, **234**, 235, 464
 - `\subsection`, **234**, 235, 464, 465
 - `\subsection*`, 465
 - `\subsubsection`, **234**, 235, 464
 - syntax of, 235
- structures, theorem-like, *see*
 - proclamations
- struts, **95–96**, 119, 183
- style (`sty`) files, 232, **364**, **385–394**
 - commands in, 385
 - terminating, 394
- style files, `BIBTEX`, *see* `bst`
- styles
 - bibliographical, *see also* `bst`, 250
 - for counters, 70, 103, 382, 402, **402–403**, 412
 - of pages, 252–254
 - of proclamations, **109–111**, 504
 - of tables, 120
 - text environments, 103
- `subarray` (subsid. math env.), 141, 153
- subentries, in indexes, 251, 447, **451**, 452, 454
- `subequations` (disp. math env.), **186**, 187, 202, 403
- subformulas
 - indentation of, 201
 - rules for, **199–200**, 206–207
 - shorthand commands for, 362–364, 370–371
- `\subitem` (index com.), 251, 447
- `\subjclass` (top matter com.)
 - optional arguments of, 263
 - rules for using, 263
- `\subjclassname` (redef. name), 376
- subject classifications, AMS, 263
- `\subparagraph` (struct. com.), **234**, 235, 464
- `subparagraph` (counter), 402
- subscripts, math, **14**, 16, **138–139**, 141, 161
 - as limits, **16**, **141**, 149–153, 161, 162, 280, 374
 - as multiline limits, 153
 - double, 182
 - font size of, 182
 - with horizontal braces, 155
- `\subsection` (struct. com.), **234**, 235, 332, 464, 465
- `subsection` (counter), 402
- `\subsection*` (struct. com.), 465
- `\subsectionname` (`hyperref` redef. name), 305
- `\Subset` (\Subset binary rel.), 484
- `\subset` (\subset binary rel.), 483
- `\subseteq` (\subseteq binary rel.), 483
- `\subseteqq` (\subseteqq binary rel.), 484
- `\subsetneq` (\subsetneq neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\subsetneqq` (\subsetneqq neg. binary rel.), 485
- subsidiary math environments
 - `aligned`, 194, **210–212**, 225
 - `alignedat`, **210–212**, 222, 225
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks`
- commands, 225
 - `array`, 192, 194, 212, 215, **218–221**, 221, 294, 503
 - `Bmatrix`, **217**
 - `bmatrix`, **217**
 - cases, 22–23, 192, 194, **221–222**
 - CD, 222–224
 - for aligning formulas, 192, **193**, **210–214**, 225, 280
 - `gathered`, 194, 210–213, 225
 - `matrix`, 16–17, 192, 194, 214, **215–221**
 - numbering of, 212, 213
 - page breaks in, 224
 - `pmatrix`, 16–17, **217**
 - `smallmatrix`, 218
 - `split`, 192, 194, **212–214**, 225, 280
 - `subarray`, 141, 153
 - `Vmatrix`, 163, **217**
 - `vmatrix`, 16, 17, **217**
- `\substack` (math com.), 141, **153**, 153
- substitution, of fonts, 77, 300, 477
- subsubentries, in indexes, 251, 447, **452**, 454

- `\subsubitem` (index com.), 251, 447
- `\subsubsection` (struct. com.), **234**, 235, 464
- `subsubsection` (counter), 402
- `\subsubsectionname` (redef. name), 304
- subtraction, 14, 46, 137
- `\succ` ($>$ binary rel.), 483
- `\succapprox` (\gtrsim binary rel.), 484
- `\succcurlyeq` (\geq binary rel.), 484
- `\succeq` (\geq binary rel.), 483
- `\succnapprox` (\gtrsim binary rel.), 485
- `\succneqq` (\geq binary rel.), 485
- `\succnsim` (\gtrsim binary rel.), 485
- `\succsim` (\gtrsim binary rel.), 484
- `\sum` (\sum large math op.), 17, 152, 182, 491
 - with primes, 177
- `sumlimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), **280**
- sums, 17, 151
- `\sup` (sup math op.), 150, 490
- superscripts, **14**, 16, **138–139**, 141, 155, 161
 - as limits, **16**, **141**, 149, 151–153, 161
 - as multiline limits, 153
 - in math
 - as limits, 280
 - font size of, 182
 - with horizontal braces, 155
 - in text, 293, 499
- support, technical, *see* technical support
- `\suppressfloats` (float com.), 245
- suppressing
 - creation of auxiliary files, 480, 508
 - hyperlinks in PDF files, 304
 - indents (`\noindent` com.), 82, 478
 - italic correction, 75
 - ligatures, **62**, 161, 363
 - line breaks (`\nolinebreak` com.), 81
 - loading of the `amsmath` package, 282
 - numbering, 195, 199
 - of equations, 21, 22, 136, 185, 195, 196, 199, 201, 213, 254
 - of first page of documents, 254
 - of proclamations, 109, 110, 381
 - of structural units, 235, 465
 - `Overfull \hbox` warnings, 79
 - page breaks (`\nopagebreak` com.), 83
 - placement of floats, 245
 - q.e.d. symbol, 112
 - spaces, 382, 455
- `\Supset` (\supseteq binary rel.), 484
- `\supset` (\supset binary rel.), 483
- `\supseteq` (\supseteq binary rel.), 483
- `\supseteqq` (\supseteq binary rel.), 484
- `\supsetneq` (\supsetneq binary rel.), 485
- `\supsetneqq` (\supsetneq binary rel.), 485
- `\surd` ($\sqrt{}$ math sym.), 488
- Sutor, Robert, 548
- Swanson, Ellen, 201, 545, 550
- `\swapnumbers` (theorem-style com.), 111
- `\swarrow` (\swarrow math arrow), 487
- `\symbol` (symbol com.), **61**, 293
- symbol alphabets, math, **180**
 - blackboard bold, 180
 - calligraphic, 180
 - Euler Fraktur, 180
 - Greek, 180
- symbolic references, showing in margins, **240**, 295
- symbolic referencing, *see also*
 - cross-referencing, 19, *see also*
 - cross-referencing, 40, *see also*
 - cross-referencing, 69, **237**, **19–240**, 508
- symbols
 - as footnote indicators, 70
 - math, 13, 38, 46, 111, 154, 162, 223, 231, 276, 293, 481, 493–493
 - alphabets, **180**
 - and delimiters, 15, 145, 146
 - bold, **181–182**, 282, 295
 - building new, 162, **174–178**, 370
 - classification of, **168–169**, 178
 - declaring types of, 178
 - end of proof, 95, 373
 - in text, 363
 - large, 210, 211
 - negated, 177–178
 - shorthand commands for, 362
 - side-setting, 177–178
 - sizes of, 182
 - spacing of, 168–172
 - stacking, 41, 176, 174–177
 - STIX, **173**, 167–174
 - stretchable, 155–157
 - suppressing, 111, 112
 - text, 60, 62, 261, 496, 498, 499
- `SymbolTables.pdf` (sample file), 11, 13
- systems of equations, 208
- `\t` (tie text accent), 63, 496
- T1 font encoding, 65, 499, 525
- tab
 - character, 47, 48, 52, 84
 - Tab key, 7, 9, 47
- Tab key, 7, 9, 47
- `tabbing` (display text env.), **121–123**
- `table` (counter), 402
- `table` (float env.), **242–243**
 - optional arguments of, 244, 480

- placement of, 478, 480
- `table*` (float env.), 243
- `\tablename` (redef. name), 376
 - and `hyperref` package, 305
- `\tableofcontents` (front-matter com.), 310, **467**, 509
- tables, **113–120**, 121, 220, **242**, 244, 295, 503
 - captions in, **26**, 114, **242**, 470
 - fragile commands in, 57
 - commands for, 26, 115, 117–120, 242, 470
 - cross-referencing of, 114
 - designing, 120
 - double-column, 243
 - float controls, 114
 - forcing typesetting of, 83
 - hyphenation, 505
 - intersection of lines in, 120, **295**
 - lists of, *see under* lists
 - multiline entries in, 118
 - multipage, 295
 - numbering of, 242
 - placement of, 478, 480
 - style of, 120
 - typeset inline, 113
- tables of contents, 234, 303, **467–469**
 - adding a line to, 467–468, 480
 - adding vertical spacing to, 468
 - auxiliary file (`\toc`), 467, 480, 509
 - commands, 467, 468
 - depth of, 404
 - fragile commands in, 57, 469
 - in frames, 310
 - in presentations, 340
 - typesetting, 467–469
- tabs, setting, 121
- `tabular` (table env.), 61, **113–120**, 220, 242, 294, 295, 503
 - arguments of, 115
 - optional, 115
 - breaking lines in, 115
 - column-formatting in, 115
 - horizontal lines in, 115, 117
 - intercolumn space in, 115
 - `\parbox` in, 92
 - rules for, 115
 - vertical lines in, 115
 - width of columns in, 116
- `tabularx` (pack.), 295
- `\tag`, 20, **185**, 185, 195–197, 199, 201, 212, 213, 240
- `\tag*`, 185
- tags (names for equations), 20, **185–187**, 195–197, 199, 201, 212, 213, 240
 - top-or-bottom placement of, 280
- `\tan` (tan math op.), 149, 490
- `\tanh` (tanh math op.), 149, 490
- Tantau, Till, 307, 342, 344, 544, 550
- `\tau` (τ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\tbinom` (inline-style binomial com.), 139
- `tbtags` (doc. class opt.), **280**
- technical reports, in B_IB_TE_X database files, 434
- technical support
 - on the Internet, 519
 - provided by T_EX users groups, 518
 - provided by the AMS, 519
- TECHREPORT (bibl. entry type), 425, **434**
- `template.bib` (sample bibl. file), 423, 436, 445
- templates, 255, 288
 - bibliographical, 245, 423, 436, 445
 - customizing
 - for AMS document classes, 275–278
 - `ggamsart.tpl`, 278
 - `myams.tpl`, 275–278
 - personalized
 - making read-only, 278
- terminating
 - captions, 470
 - commands, 10, 13, 14, **52**, 53, 54, 64, 127, **134**
 - environments, **51**
 - fields in B_IB_TE_X database entries, 444
 - files, 394, **472**
 - lines, 68, 139, 365
 - TikZ, 345
 - paragraphs, 40, **48**, 82
 - sentences, 9, **48–51**, 262
- T_EX, 31, 32, 501
 - commands, 39, 377, 379
 - to avoid using, 475
 - commands in L^AT_EX, 476
 - distribution, 505
 - extensibility of, 31
 - history of, 501–505
 - inner workings of, 505
 - inputs folders, 522–523
 - layers of, 505–506
 - Plain, 505
 - programming in, 31
 - resources on the Internet, 519
 - structure of, 505
 - users groups, *see* T_EX users groups and TUG
- `\TeX` (T_EX com.), 62

- TeX users groups, 515–519, 526
- TeX Writer
 - for iPad, 530, 540–541
- `tex4ht` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 301
- TeX Live (TUG DVD/CD), 519
- Texpad
 - for iPad, 530, 534–540
- text, 6
 - accents, 53, 63, 496
 - blocks, width of, 254
 - boxes, *see* text boxes
 - centering, *see* centering text, `center` (text align. env.), *and* `\centering`, *see* centering text, `center` (text align. env.), *and* `\centering`
 - custom commands for, 364
 - editors, 5, 6, 12, 32, 36, 47, 67, 71, 363, 533
 - framing, 91
 - in math mode, 13, 18, 65, 81, 89, 134, 142–143, 160, 179, 208–210, 224, 283
 - specifying fonts for, 143
 - in tables
 - multicolumn, 117–120
 - multiline, 118
 - mode, 6
 - spacing in, 84–88
 - style commands, *see* text style commands
 - symbols, *see* text symbols
 - typing, 45–96
 - using math symbols in, 363
 - white space in, 84–88
- `\text` (box com.), 13, 18, 65, 66, 81, 89, 142–143, 160, 161, 189, 224, 283
- spacing rules in, 134
- text boxes, 89–96
 - alignment of contents in, 89, 93
 - behave as single characters, 89
 - commands for
 - `\framebox`, 91
 - `\makebox`, 89, 89–91, 93, 95
 - `\mbox`, 89
 - `\parbox`, 89, 91, 92, 93, 118, 407
 - `\raisebox`, 96, 173
 - `\rule`, 95, 96, 120
 - `\text`, 13, 18, 65, 66, 81, 89, 134, 142–143, 160, 161, 189, 224, 283
 - environments for `minipage`, 89, 91, 93, 382, 383
 - framed, 91–92
 - measurements of, 407
 - measuring, *see* measurements
 - single line, 89–90, 142
 - vertical alignment of, 93, 96
- text environments, 97–129
 - and stretchable vertical space, 408
 - blank lines in, 40, 98
 - for abstracts, *see* `abstract`
 - for alignment, 51, 88, 104, 114, 210, 408, 416
 - for boxes, *see under* text boxes
 - for documents, *see* `document`
 - for indexes, *see* `theindex`
 - for letters, *see* `letter`
 - for lists, *see* list text environments, *see* list text environments, 98
 - for styles, *see under* text style
 - for tables, *see* tables
 - rules for, 98
- text mode, 46
- text style commands
 - avoiding direct use of, 474
 - `\emph`, 6, 10, 51, 73, 74, 319, 496
 - `\textbf`, 10, 57, 73, 76, 143, 283, 319, 496
 - `\textit`, 73, 74, 319, 496
 - `\textmd`, 73, 76, 496
 - `\textnormal`, 73, 73, 143, 496
 - `\textrm`, 73, 283, 496
 - `\textsc`, 73, 74, 496
 - `\textsf`, 73, 496
 - `\textsl`, 73, 74, 496
 - `\texttt`, 10, 60, 73, 496
 - `\textup`, 73, 74, 496
- text style environments
 - `bfseries`, 103
 - `em`, 103
 - `itshape`, 103
 - `rmfamily`, 103
 - `scshape`, 103
 - `sffamily`, 103
 - `slshape`, 103
 - `ttfamily`, 103
 - `upshape`, 103
- text symbols, 61, 63, 64
 - commands, 60, 62, 261, 496, 498, 499
 - typing, 58–62
- `\textasciicircum` (^ circumflex), 64, 498
- `\textasciitilde` (~ tilde), 499
- `\textasteriskcentered` (* asterisk), 60, 64, 498
- Textastics
 - L^AT_EX app for iPad, 534
- `\textbackslash` (\ backslash), 60, 64, 498
- `\textbar` (| vertical bar), 60, 64, 498

- `\textbf` (font weight com.), 10, 57, 73, **76**, 143, 283, 319, 496
- `\textbullet` (• bullet), 64, 498
- `\textcircled` (@), **62**, 64, 498
- `\textcolor` (beamer com.), 330
- `\textcompwordmark` (lig.-suppr. com.), **62**, 363, 416
- `\textemdash` (— em dash), 64, 498
- `\textendash` (– em dash), 64, 498
- `\textexclamdown` (¡ exclamation mark), 46
- `\textgreater` (> greater than), 64, 498
- `\textit` (font shape com.), 73, **74**, 74, 319, 496
- `\textless` (< less than), 64, 498
- `\textmd` (font weight com.), 73, **76**, 496
- `\textnormal` (font shape com.), **73**, 73, 143, 496
- `textnote1.tex` (sample file), 8–9
- `textnote1bad.tex` (sample file), 11
- `textnote2.tex` (sample file), 9–11
- `\TextOrMath` (text and math mode com.), 293
- `\textperiodcentered` (· midpoint), 64, 498
- `\textquestiondown` (¿ question mark), 64, 498
- `\textquotedbl` (Eur. quot. mark), 499
- `\textquotedblleft` (“ left double quote), 64, 498
- `\textquotedblright` (” right double quote), 64, 498
- `\textquoteleft` (‘ left single quote), 499
- `\textquoteright` (’)
Eur. quot. mark, 499
right single quote, 499
- `\textregistered` (® registered trademark), 64, 498
- `\textrm` (font shape com.), 73, 283, 496
- `\textsc` (font shape com.), 73, **74**, 496
- `\textsf` (font shape com.), 73, 496
- `\textsl` (font shape com.), 73, **74**, 496
- `\textstyle` (math font size com.), **182**, 187
- `\textsubscript`, 233, 293
- `\textsuperscript` (^a), 293, 499
- `\texttrademark` (™ trademark), 499
- `\texttt` (font shape com.), 10, 60, 73, 496
- `\textup` (font shape com.), 73, **74**, 496
- `textures` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 301
- `\textvisiblespace`, 9, 47, **48**, 499
- `\textwidth` (length com.), 254, 400, **405**
- `tfm` (L^AT_EX font metric file), 506
- `\tfrac` ($\frac{x}{y}$), 137, 183
- `\TH` (Thorn Eur. char.), 499
- `\th` (thorn Eur. char.), 499
- `\thanks` (top matter com.), 70, 262–264, 277, 286
- `\the` (value expansion com.), **62–64**, 69, 70, 94, 403
- `thebibliography` (bibliography env.), 50, **245–251**, 408, 436, 445
argument of, 247, 250
- `\thechapter` (the value of counter chapter), 403
- `\thefootnote` (the value of counter footnote), 70, 71
- `theindex` (index env.), **251**, 408, **447**, 457
commands in, 251, 447
- `themes` (beamer distr. directory), 339
- `themes, for beamer presentations`, 310, **338–340**
Berkeley, 310, 313, 314, 339
color options, 339
Warsaw, 26, 313, 314, 339
- `theorem` (proclamation env.), 35, 105, 108, 324, 383
logical design of, 35
visual design of, 35
- `theorem` (pack.), 295
- `theorem-like structures`, *see* proclamations
- `\theoremname` (`hyperref` redef. name), 305
- `\theoremstyle*` (procl. com.), 109–111
- `\theoremstyle` (procl. com.), 109–111
- `\theparentequation` (the value of counter `parentequation`), 403
- `\therefore` (∴ binary rel.), 484
- `\thesection` (the value of counter section), 403
- `theses, in BIBTEX database files`, 433
- `\thesubsection` (the value of counter subsection), 403
- `\Theta` (Θ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\theta` (θ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `thick` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351, 353
- `\thickapprox` (≈ binary rel.), 484
- `\thicksim` (∼ binary rel.), 484
- `\thickspace` (spacing com.), 170, 493, 500
- `thin` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- `\thinspace` (spacing com.), 16, 51, 58, 170, 170, 493, 500
- `\thispagestyle` (set page style), 254, 480
- `thorn` (Eur. char.), 499
- `Thorup, Kresten K.`, 404

- tie (\sim spacing com.), **9**, 47, 49, 50, **59**, 59, 81, 500
 - absorbs spaces, 59
 - in \LaTeX databases, 427
 - with cross-references, 240
- tie (\sim text accent), 63, 496
- TikZ (graphics pack.), 26, 243, **344**, 344
 - above com., 351
 - align com., 351
 - arc com., 349
 - around com., 352
 - arrow com., 354–356
 - below com., 348, **351**
 - center com., 351
 - circle com., 345–349, 353
 - colors, 354
 - components, 347–350
 - controls com., 350
 - curves, 350
 - custom commands, 346
 - dashed com., 353, 354, 356
 - dotted com., 350, 353
 - $\backslash\text{draw}$ (graphics com.), **346**, 353
 - ellipse com., 348, 349, 351
 - end angle com., 349
 - every picture com., 347
 - fill com., 346
 - grid com., 344, 346
 - in com., 350, 354
 - labels, 346, 350
 - left com., 351, 356
 - line width com., 345, 347, 353
 - $\backslash\text{node}$ com., 351
 - optional arguments, 344, 345
 - out com., 350, 354
 - path attributes, 353–356
 - radius com., 345
 - rectangle com., 349, 351, 352
 - right com., 351, 356
 - rotate com., 351
 - scale com., 352
 - semithick com., 353
 - shift com., 352
 - start angle com., 349
 - terminating lines, 345
 - thick com., 351, 353
 - thin com., 353
 - tikz-cd manual, 354, 357
 - tikzpicture (graphics env.), 344
 - $\backslash\text{tikzset}$ com., 347
 - transformations, 351–353
 - ultra thick com., 353
 - ultra thin com., 353
 - very thick com., 350, 353, 354
 - very thin com., 353
 - xscale com., 353
 - yscale com., 353
- tikzpicture (graphics env.), 344
- $\backslash\text{tikzset}$ (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 347
- tilde (\sim)
 - text accent, 63, 496
 - text symbol, 499
- $\backslash\text{tilde}$ (\tilde{x} math accent), 16, 154, 492
- $\backslash\text{time}$ (time com.), 63
- time commands
 - $\backslash\text{day}$, 63
 - $\backslash\text{month}$, 63
 - $\backslash\text{time}$, 63
 - $\backslash\text{today}$, **10**, 53–54, 64, 128, 286, 379, 526
 - $\backslash\text{year}$, 63
- Times, in \LaTeX documents, 522–523
- $\backslash\text{times}$ (\times math op.), 14, **137**, 486
- times (pack.), 522
- times.sty (PSNFSS distr. file), 522
- $\backslash\text{Tiny}$ (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- $\backslash\text{tiny}$ (font size com.), **76**, 76, 497
- Tisseau, Gérard, 357, 550
- $\backslash\text{title}$ (top matter com.), 27, 88, 231, 278, 286, 313, 466
 - optional arguments of, 27, 257, 258, 266, 278
- title (\LaTeX database field), 424–426, 433
- title pages, 257, 512
 - document class options for, 231, 281, 282, 289
 - environments for, 466
 - footnotes on, 70
 - of articles, 231, 233
 - of books, 465, 466
 - of presentations, 26
- titlepage (doc. class opt.), 231, **281**, 289, 466
- $\backslash\text{titlepage}$ (beamer com.), 310
- titlepage (front matter env.), 466
- titles
 - in bibliographies
 - rules for typing, 426–427
 - in running heads, 258, 278
 - of articles, **257**, 278
 - of structural commands, 234
 - fragile commands in, 57
- $\backslash\text{to}$ (\rightarrow math arrow), 487
- toc (table of contents files), 467–469, 480, 509
 - commands in, 469
- tocdepth (counter), 404, 467
- $\backslash\text{today}$ (time com.), **10**, 53–54, 64, 128, 286, 379, 526

- tokens, 506
- tools (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 293–296
 - packages in, 294–296
- tools (pack.), 294
- \top (T math sym.), 488
- top matter, 24, 231, **233**, 256
 - article information
 - of AMS documents, 257–259
 - commands, 27, 64, 70, 88, 254, 257, 261, **257–265**, 266, 268, 277, 278, 313, 466
 - blank lines in, 257
 - examples of, 265–268
 - with multiple authors, 264–265
- customizing templates, 275
- is document-class specific, 233
- of AMS documents, 257–268
 - AMS information, 263–264
 - author information, 259–263
 - errors with, 267–268
 - examples, 265–268
 - with multiple authors, 264
- of books, 233
- of presentations, 26, 308–309, 313
- top-or-bottom, placement of tags, 280
- topmat.tpl (sample file), 265
- \topsep (length com.), 409, **410**
- \totalheight (length com.), **90**, 90, 92, 93
- trace (pack.), 295
- trademark text symbols (™ ®), 64, 498, 499
- trans (beamer doc. class opt.), 341
- transformations, TikZ graphics, 351–353
- translation, of line ending characters, 47
- \translator (top matter com.), 258
- \triangle (Δ math sym.), 488
- \triangledown (∇ math sym.), 488
- \triangleleft (\triangleleft math op.), 486
- \trianglelefteq (\trianglelefteq binary rel.), 484
- \triangleq (\triangleq binary rel.), 484
- \triangleright (\triangleright math op.), 486
- \trianglerighteq (\trianglerighteq binary rel.), 484
- trivlist (list text env.), 416
- \tt (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 77
- \ttfamily (font shape com. dec.), 73, 103, 122, 496
- ttfamily (font shape env.), 103
- TUG (T_EX Users Group), 5, 515, 518–519
- TUGboat, 518
- two-letter font commands, *see under* font commands
- twocolumn (doc. class opt.), 68, 84, 243, **281**, 289, 290
 - and footnotes, 295
- \twocolumn (double-column com.), 84
- \twoheadleftarrow (\leftarrow math arrow), 487
- \twoheadrightarrow (\rightarrow math arrow), 487
- twoside (doc. class opt.), 68, 231, **281**, 289, 290, 466
- type (Bib_TE_X database field), 425
- type foundries, 522, 524
- types
 - of commands, 57–58
 - of math symbols, **168**, 182
 - declaring, 178
- typeset
 - example articles
 - secondarticle.tex**, 268–275
 - files, 5, 6
 - DVI format, 507
 - PDF format, 6, 244, 301, 507
- typesetting
 - indexes, 456–459
 - source files, **5**, 11, 19, 34, 35, 38, 47, 57, 511
 - tables of contents, 467–469
 - with L^AT_EX, 32, 33, **502**, 506–510
- typesetting source files
 - iPad, 538, 541
- typewriter style
 - document font family, **72**, 72
 - font shape, 10, 60, 61, 73, **103**, 122, 363, 496, 522
 - fonts, 71
 - in math, **179**, 179, 492
- typing
 - bibliographic entries, 425–436
 - accents in, 427
 - names in, 425–426
 - rules for, 442–445
 - titles in, 426–427
 - books, 463–480
 - exercises, 470
 - footnotes, 70–71
 - math, 23, 131–189
 - poetry, 124–125
 - programs, 121–123, 125–127
 - quotations, 123–124
 - text, 45–96
 - symbols, 58–62
- typographical
 - errors, 35
 - rules for
 - abbreviations and acronyms, 74
 - initials, 50, 51
- \u breve text accent (\breve), 63, 496

- UK TUG (United Kingdom T_EX Users Group)
 - Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), 519
- `\ulcorner` (\ulcorner math delimiter), 145, 489
- `ultra thick` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- `ultra thin` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- Umeki, Hideo, 254
- `umlaut` (`¨` text accent), 7, 11, 63, 496, 526
- unbreakable
 - hyphens, 66
 - spaces (`~` tie), 9, 47, 50, 59, 59, 81, 500
 - absorb spaces, 59
 - in BibT_EX databases, 427
 - with cross-references, 240
- `\underbrace` (math sym.), 155
 - with a subscript, 155
- `underdot` text accent (`.`), 63, 496
- `\underleftarrow` ($\underline{\leftarrow}$ math arrow), 156
- `\underleftrightarrow` ($\underline{\leftrightarrow}$ math arrow), 156
- `\underline` ($\underline{\hspace{0.5cm}}$ math line sym.), 156
- `\underrightarrow` ($\underline{\rightarrow}$ math arrow), 156
- `underscore` (`_`), 60
 - text symbol, 64, 498
 - in e-mail addresses, 261
- `underscore` text accent (`_`), 63, 496
- `\underset` (symbol-building com.), 162, 176
- units
 - absolute, *see under* absolute
 - dimensional, *see under* dimensional units
 - logical, *see under* logical
 - math, *see* μ
 - relative, *see under* relative
- UNIX, 445, 502
 - FTP clients, 516
 - L^AT_EX implementations, 458
- `\unlhd` (\unlhd math op.), 486
- unmarked footnotes, 263
- unnumbered
 - environments, 199
 - equations, 18, 21, 22, 136, 185, 194–196, 199, 201, 213, 310
 - items, 99
 - math environments, 195
 - proclamations, 109, 110, 381
 - structural units, 235, 465
- unpacked (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 293, 517
- UNPUBLISHED (bibl. entry type), 434
- `\unrhd` (\unrhd math op.), 486
- `\Uparrow` (\Uparrow)
 - math arrow, 487
 - math delimiter, 145, 489
- `\uparrow` (\uparrow)
 - math arrow, 487
 - math delimiter, 145, 489
- updates
 - to AMSFonts and packages, 510
 - to L^AT_EX, 174, 509
- `\Updownarrow` (\Updownarrow)
 - math arrow, 487
 - math delimiter, 145, 489
- `\updownarrow` (\updownarrow)
 - math arrow, 487
 - math delimiter, 145, 489
- `\upharpoonleft` (\upharpoonleft math arrow), 487
- `\upharpoonright` (\upharpoonright math arrow), 487
- `\uplus` (\uplus math op.), 486
- `\upn` (font shape com.), 136
- uppercase counter styles
 - letters (`\alph`), 402
 - roman numerals (`\roman`), 402
- `upref` (pack.), 282, 283
- upright (font shape), 19, 71, 72, 73, 74, 103, 136, 382, 414, 496
 - context dependence of, 74
- `\uproot` (root-adjustment com.), 142
- `\upshape` (font shape com. dec.), 73, 74, 103, 382, 414, 496
- `upshape` (font shape env.), 103
- `\Upsilon` (Y Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\upsilon` (v Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\upuparrows` (\upuparrows math arrow), 487
- `\urcorner` (\urcorner math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\URL` (bibl. com.), 425
- URL (Uniform Resource Locator), 262, *see also* hyperlinks
- `\urladdr` (top matter com.), 262, 262, 277, 304
- `\usecolortheme` (beamer com.), 339
- `\usecounter` (list counter com.), 412
- `\usefonttheme` (beamer com.), 340
- `\usepackage` (preamble com.), 24, 53, 231, 276, 301, 302, 308, 364, 385, 448, 511
 - can load multiple packages, 232
- user-defined commands, *see* custom commands
- users groups, 515, 517, 518–519, 526
- `\usetheorem` (beamer com.), 26, 310, 339
- UNIX, 473

- `\v` caron text accent (ˇ), 63, 496
- `\value` (value of counter), 404
- values, of counters, 34, 70, 403
 - printing, 62–64, 94, 403
- van Oostrum, Piet, 254, 515
- `\varDelta` (Δ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varepsilon` (ϵ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varGamma` (Γ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varinjlim` (\varinjlim math op.), 150, 490
- `\varepsilon` (ϵ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varLambda` (Λ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varliminf` (\varliminf math op.), 150, 490
- `\varlimsup` (\varlimsup math op.), 150
- `\varnothing` (\emptyset math sym.), 488
- `\varOmega` (Ω Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varPhi` (Φ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varphi` (ϕ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varPi` (Π Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varpi` (\wp Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varprojlim` (\varprojlim math op.), 150, 490
- `\varpropto` (\propto binary rel.), 484
- `\varPsi` (Ψ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varrho` (ρ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varSigma` (Σ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varsigma` (ς Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varsubsetneq` (\subsetneq neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\varsubsetneqq` (\subsetneqq neg. binary rel.), 485
- `\varsupsetneq` (\supsetneq binary rel.), 485
- `\varsupsetneqq` (\supsetneqq binary rel.), 485
- `\varTheta` (Θ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\vartheta` (θ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\vartriangle` (Δ math op.), 486
- `\vartriangleleft` (\triangleleft math op.), 486
- `\vartriangleright` (\triangleright math op.), 486
- `\varUpsilon` (Υ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\varXi` (Ξ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\Vdash` (\Vdash binary rel.), 484
- `\vdash` (\vdash binary rel.), 484
- `\vdash` (\vdash binary rel.), 483
- `\vdots` (vertical ellipsis), 140, 218
- `\vec` (\vec math accent), 16, 154, 375, 492
- `\vee` (\vee math op.), 486
- `\veebar` (\veebar math op.), 486
- `\verb` (inline verbatim com.), 127–129
 - in aligned math environments, 128
 - in argument of other commands, 128
 - spaces in, 128
- `\verb*` (inline verbatim com.), 128
 - delimiters with, 127–129
- `verbatim` (disp. text env.), 98, 127, 125–127, 295, 341, 503
 - blank lines in, 126
 - characters following, 126
 - simulating with `\verb`, 128
- `verbatim` (pack.), 69, 70, 127, 295, 386
- `verse` (disp. text env.), 124, 408
 - breaking lines in, 125
- versions
 - of AMS packages and AMSFonts, 281, 283, 504, 510
 - of L^AT_EX packages, 509–510
- `\Vert` (\parallel math delimiter), 145, 489
- `\vert` ($|$ math delimiter), 145, 489
- vertical
 - alignment, of boxes, 93, 96
 - bar ($|$ text symbol), 64, 498
 - ellipses, 140, 218
 - glue, 507
 - lines
 - in CD environments, 223
 - in `tabular` environments, 115
 - math arrows, 223
- vertical spacing
 - adding after `\`, 80
 - adding to table of contents, 468
 - adjusting
 - with `\arraystretch`, 119
 - with struts, 119
 - adjusting with the `setspace` package, 81
 - between marginal notes, 405
 - between paragraphs, 405
 - commands
 - `\bigskip`, 40, 86
 - `\enlargethispage`, 83, 478, 480
 - `\medskip`, 86
 - `\smallskip`, 40, 86
 - `\smash`, 96, 184, 184
 - to avoid using, 475
 - `\vfill` (fill com.), 88
 - `\vphantom`, 87, 183
 - `\vskip`, 40
 - `\vspace`, 40, 86
 - `\vspace*`, 87
 - in boxes, 96
 - in indexes, 251, 447
 - in math mode, 183–184
 - in text, 40, 86–87, 377, 468, 476, 480
 - preventing removal of, 87
 - stretchable, 408
 - using the `setspace` package, 81
- `very thick` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 350, 353, 354
- `very thin` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- `\vfill` (space fill com.), 88

- viewers
 - DVI, 507, 517
 - PDF, *see under* PDF
- viewing typeset files, 507
 - DVI format, 507
 - PDF format, 6, 244, 301, 507
- virtex** (T_EX program), 505
- visible spaces (`\`), 9, 47
 - and `\verb*` command, 128
- Visual
 - Guide, to multiline math formulas, **191**
- visual
 - design, 35, 229, 252–254, 340
 - markup, 512
 - guide, to multiline math formulas, *192*
- Vmatrix** (subsid. math env.), 163, **217**
- vmatrix** (subsid. math env.), 16, 17, **217**
- volume** (B_IB_TE_X database field), 424, 425
- von, in bibliographic entries, 426
- `\vphantom` (spacing com.), 87, 183
- `\vskip` (spacing com.), 40
- `\vspace` (spacing com.), 40, 86
- `\vspace*` (spacing com.), 87
- vtex** (opt. of **hyperref** pack.), 301
- `\Vvdash` (\Vdash binary rel.), *484*
- warning messages
 - about hyphenation, 79
 - Abstract should precede `\maketitle`
- in AMS document classes, 233
 - Characters dropped after `\end{verbatim}`, 126
 - `\end` occurred inside a group at level *x*, 55
 - `\end` occurred when `\xxx` on line *yy* was incomplete, 472
 - generated by overlapping braces, 55
 - Label(s) may have changed, 239
 - line numbers in, 11
 - lines are too wide, 78, 11–79
 - No auxiliary output files, 508
 - Overfull `\hbox`, 78, **11–79**, 507
 - suppressing, 79
 - recorded in log file, **34**, 79
 - regarding font substitution, 77
 - Rerun to get cross-references right, 239
 - Underfull `\vbox` has occurred
- while `\output` is active, 507
 - Warning-missing *field* in *label*, 443–445
 - when using `\NeedsTeXFormat`, 232, 385, 509
 - with B_IB_TE_X, 442–445
- Warsaw** (beamer theme), 26, 313, *314*, 339
- `\wedge` (\wedge math op.), *486*
- weight, of fonts, *see under* font environments, font commands and font declarations
- Weisberg, Jonathan, 534
- white** (TikZ color), 354
- white space
 - adjusting, 40, 476
 - and binary operations and relations, 135
 - between marginal notes, 405
 - between paragraphs, 405
 - commands, avoiding direct use of, 475
 - determined by document classes, 84
 - horizontal, 51, 84, 87, 122, 134, 169–171, 207, 296, 366–367, *493*, *500*
 - in math mode, 165, 216, 219
 - in text mode, 9, 14, **48–51**, **84–86**, **88**, 95, 106, 416
 - in arguments of commands, 68
 - in command definitions, 365
 - in command names, 52
 - in delimited commands, 378–379
 - in math, 13, 37, 86–87, 134–135, 168–172, 183–184
 - adjusting, 86
 - in source files, 135
 - in **tabular** environments, 115
 - in text, 9, **84–88**, 382, 427, *493*, *500*
 - in `\verb` commands, 128
 - in **verbatim** environments, 126
 - suppressing, 382, 455
 - terminating commands with, 52
 - vertical, 84
 - adding to table of contents, 468
 - adjusting, 475
 - in math mode, 86–87, 183–184
 - in text mode, 40, 83, **86–88**, 184, 377, 476, 480
- `\widehat` ($\hat{}$ math accent), **154**, *154*, 164, *492*
- `\widetilde` ($\tilde{}$ math accent), **154**, *154*, *492*
- width
 - of columns in **tabular** environments, 116
 - of fonts, *see* font width
 - of text blocks, 254, 400, 405
 - of text boxes, 89–90, *407*

- `\width` (length com.), 90, 90, 93
- word processors, 8
- words, are separated by spaces, 65
- `work` (folder), 5, 8, 10, 11, 38, 157, 275, 302, 308, 309, 313, 325, 438
 - creating, 5
- `\wp` (\wp math sym.), 488
- `\wr` (\wr math op.), 486
- wrapping, of lines by text editors, 67
- `xcb` (exercise env.), 470
- `xcolor` (pack.), 307, 330
 - options, 331
- `\Xi` (Ξ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\xi` (ξ Greek char.), 144, 482
- `\xleftarrow` (stretchable math arrow), 157
- `xr` (pack.), 240, 296
- `\xrightarrow` (stretchable math arrow), 157
- `xscale` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- `xspace` (pack.), 296, 366–367
- `xy-pic` (pack.), 224
- Y&Y, 505, 521
- `\year` (time com.), 63
- `year` (BIBTEX database field), 424, 425
- `yscale` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- zero, specifying in arguments, 96
- `\zeta` (ζ Greek char.), 144, 482